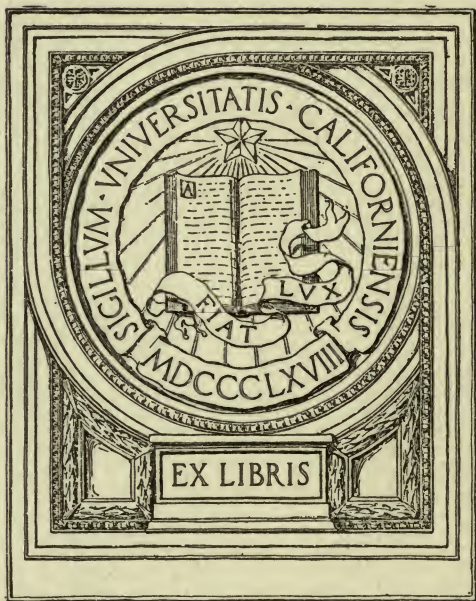


FUNDAMENTAL ENGLISH

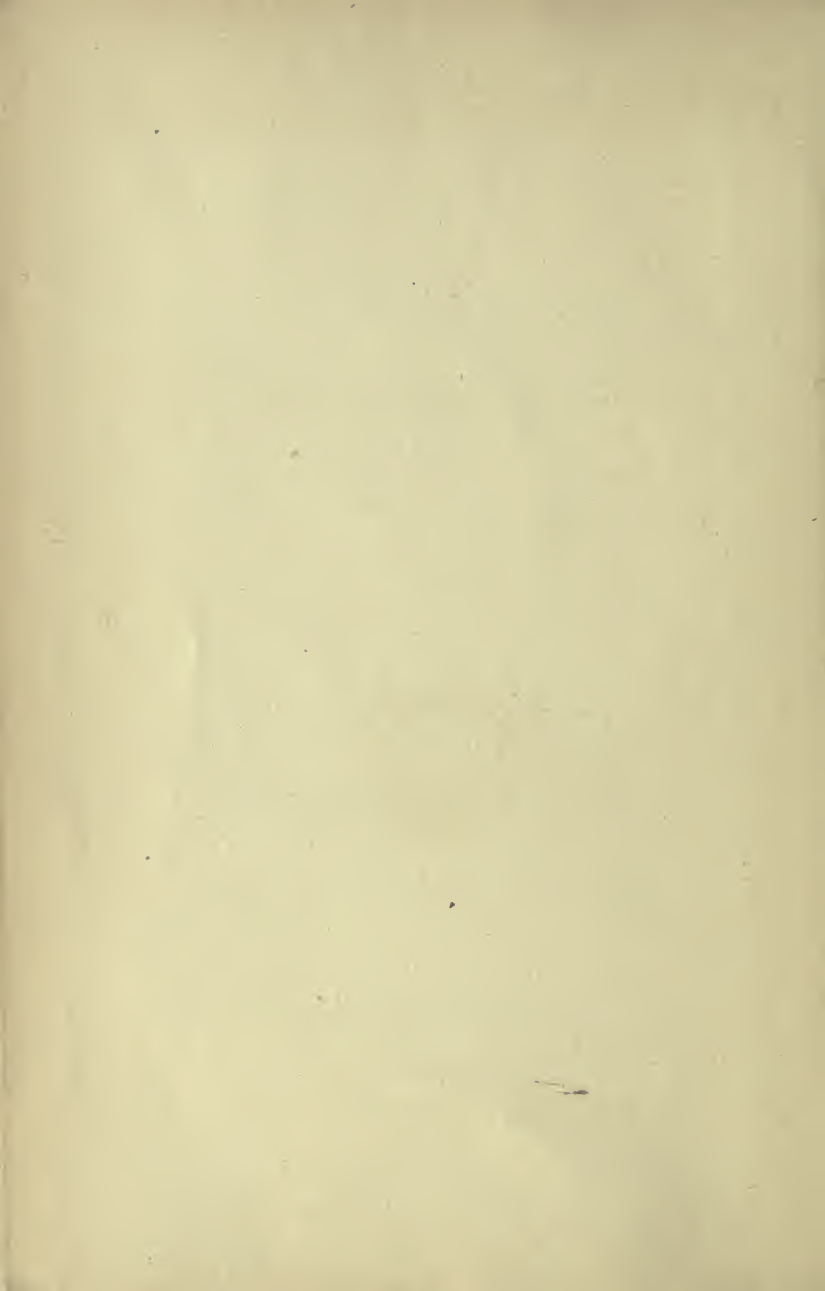
JOHN P. McNICHOLS S.J.



897
M169

M.P.S. 615-

80 retail



FUNDAMENTAL ENGLISH

BY

JOHN P. McNICHOLS, S.J.



NEW YORK
SCHWARTZ, KIRWIN & FAUSS
42 BARCLAY STREET

First Edition, printed December, 1908
Reprinted September, 1909; May, 1910; August, 1910;
July, 1911; October, 1911; August, 1912; July, 1913

Copyright, 1908,
By SCHWARTZ, KIRWIN & FAUSS

Entered at Stationers' Hall

J. J. Little & Ives Co.
New York

PREFACE

As the end of this work is to lay the foundations of success in English Composition, its purpose is expressed fairly well by its very title, "Fundamental English." This purpose and the method to be followed in attaining it are explained at length in the Preface to the "Teachers' Handbook" which is intended to accompany the present volume, and which will be issued to teachers *only*. Here, it is perhaps enough to say that we will attempt to attain our object by proposing a systematic course in sentence-building, a sane method of reproduction, and a simple scheme for teaching original composition.

We realize that sentence-building should not be begun before sentence-analysis has been studied. Accordingly, we have prefaced the exercises in sentence-building with a simple explanation of analysis, as well as with numerous examples of the various kinds of sentences required for its study.

The selections to be used in reproduction, and an explanation of their use, appear in the "Teachers' Handbook," while in the Fourth Part of the present volume are given synopses of these selections, intended for the use of *pupils*.

The scheme for original composition, together with selections necessary for it, will be found in the Second Part of the "Teachers' Handbook."

At the suggestion of several teachers we have inserted as an appendix to this, the pupils' book, a collection of what we consider the essential rules of Syntax, our object being to make it possible to eliminate any formal work on grammar in classes where "Fundamental English" is used.

"Fundamental English" is not an experiment. In its manuscript form it has been used in the class-room, and has been found practical. With the exception of the Second Part of the "Teachers' Handbook" (which is from the notes of a Jesuit Father, and which is something new in this line), the work lays no claim to originality; if it has any merit, it is only this—it is systematic.

The author wishes to acknowledge the help he has received in the preparation of "Fundamental English" from many among his Jesuit fellow-teachers. He is also indebted for assistance to many among his pupils, both past and present, notably to Mr. William L. Reenan, A.B., Mr. John L. Bunker, A.B., Mr. Charles E. Kiely, A.B., and Mr. Charles O. Bridwell, A.B.

JOHN P. McNICHOLS, S.J

ST. XAVIER COLLEGE,
CINCINNATI, OHIO, *Sept. 8, 1908.*

CONTENTS

	PAGE
PREFACE	3
PART I	
PRECEPTS OF ANALYSIS	7
PART II	
EXERCISES IN ANALYSIS	11
PART III	
SENTENCE-BUILDING	55
PART IV	
SYNOPSSES OF SELECTIONS	143
APPENDIX—SYNTAX	267



Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2007 with funding from
Microsoft Corporation

FUNDAMENTAL ENGLISH

PART I

PRECEPTS OF ANALYSIS

A Sentence is a collection of words making complete sense.

Sentences are divided into **four** kinds;—simple, complex, compound, compound-complex.

A **Simple** sentence is one in which there is only **one** finite verb, i. e. only one verb in the Indicative, Subjunctive, Potential, or Imperative mood. This **one** verb may have one or several subjects, and one or several objects, or no object.

A **Phrase** is a group of words not containing a finite verb, and serving the purpose of a noun, an adjective, or an adverb in a sentence.

Phrases are called substantive or noun phrases, adjective phrases, and adverbial phrases, according as they serve the purpose of a noun, an adjective, or an adverb.

Noun phrases are either subject phrases, or object phrases, or agent phrases, according as they supply the place of a subject, an object, or an agent.

Adjective phrases are subdivided into;—

Simple adjective phrases, i. e. phrases introduced by an adjective.

Participial adjective phrases, i. e. phrases introduced by a participle.

Prepositional adjective phrases, i. e. phrases introduced by a preposition.

Appositional adjective phrases, i. e. phrases introduced by a noun with or without its article.

Adverbial phrases are variously introduced, and are used to mark the time, place, manner, means, cause, purpose, instrument, etc., of the idea expressed by a verb, an adjective, or another adverb.

Complex and Compound sentences have at least two finite verbs. Each of these verbs has a subject expressed or understood. They may have the same object, or different objects, or no object at all, or one may have an object, and the other have none. It follows, then, that since in every complex or compound sentence there are two verbs with their subjects, there are in every complex or compound sentence at least two groups of words each containing a verb, either with or without an object, but with a subject expressed or understood. Each of these groups of words is called a clause.

A **Clause**, therefore, is any group of words in a sentence containing a finite verb and its subject, the latter either expressed or understood.

Clauses are of two kinds: **dependent**, and **independent**.

*A **Dependent clause** is one that, with regard to another

*In actual use it has been found that this definition of a dependent clause possesses peculiar virtues. *It can be understood, and applied by the pupils quite easily.* It has one difficulty. Pupils using this definition sometimes fall into the error of mistaking a principal clause introduced by an adverb of time or place for a dependent temporal or local clause. Thus in a sentence such as, "Then the conqueror burnt his ships, and retired into the interior of the country", pupils mistake the

clause in the **same** sentence, or to some word in **another** clause of the **same** sentence, performs the office of a noun, an adjective, or an adverb.

An Independent clause is one that does **not** fulfill for another clause in the same sentence, or for some word in another clause of the same sentence, the office of a noun, an adjective, or an adverb.

A Complex sentence contains **one independent** clause, and **one or more dependent** clauses.

A Compound sentence contains **two or more independent** clauses, but **no dependent** clauses.

A Compound-Complex sentence contains **at least two independent** clauses, and **at least one** dependent clause.

Phrases occur in complex, compound, and compound-complex sentences. They serve the same purposes in the various **clauses** of these sentences that they serve in a simple sentence.

Golden Rules for Analysis.

(1) A collection of words containing no finite verb can not be more than a **phrase**.

(2) A collection of words containing **only one** finite verb can not be more than a **simple** sentence.

(3) A collection of words containing not more than **two** finite verbs cannot be more than a **complex** or a **compound** sentence.

first clause for a temporal clause because it is introduced by "then" and—they argue—gives the time of the *other* clause in the sentence. This difficulty may be obviated by remarking that in real temporal or local *dependent* clauses the temporal or local particle does *not* mark the time or place of the verb of its *own* clause, but that the *whole* temporal clause marks the time or place of *another* clause.—*Insist on the definition, "with regard to another clause."*

(4) A collection of words **must** have at least **three** finite verbs in order to be a **compound-complex** sentence.

NOTE.—These definitions have been taken from many sources, as far as we can remember. It is not claimed for them that they are superior to all others. They have been found in actual practice to be intelligible to pupils. They are given here not because we want to force them on pupils who may be accustomed to other definitions, but because, when we use the terms phrase, clause, complex, etc., in the following exercises, we use them in the senses we have here defined. It is for the sake of the following exercises that we have gone into these definitions, and we have gone into them only in so far as the exercises require.

PART II

EXERCISES IN ANALYSIS

EXERCISE I

Model.—Washington and his troops crossed the Delaware.

Remark.—This is a simple sentence because it contains but one finite verb.

Practice.—Explain why each of the following sentences is a simple sentence. Point out the verb.

1. The great monarch died childless.
2. Peter I. learned the shipbuilder's trade.
3. The rising sun dispersed the dense fog.
4. The western sky was curtained with rosy clouds.
5. The terrible plague swept away thousands.
6. The spring floods destroy the strongest bridges.
7. The snow filled up the watercourses and ravines.
8. The Russian navy was almost completely annihilated.
9. The typhoon littered the coast with wreckage.
10. Sweet music was borne along on the breezes.
11. The fire quickly spread from the wharves to the shipping.
12. The engineer was scalded to death by the escaping steam.
13. The morning star is a jewel on the brow of Dawn.
14. The march to Moscow broke the power of the French.
15. The Panama canal will increase American wealth and influence.
16. The sorrow-stricken heart is comforted by a kind word.
17. In suavity a merchant has a passport to riches.
18. The moss-grown ruins looked sad in the weak moonlight.
19. The battle-fields of the Civil War are sacred ground.
20. The mighty iceberg bore down the helpless ship.
21. All creation bespeaks God's goodness.
22. Virtue is its own reward.
23. Silence has been called the language of great men.

24. The tiny brook babbles out a cry to the sounding sea.

25. In fertile fields and prosperous cities the hand of the conqueror was seen.

EXERCISE II

Model.—To win the battle under such circumstances was great glory for the young commander.*

Remark.—"To win the battle under such circumstances" is a phrase that serves the purpose of a noun in this sentence inasmuch as it is really the subject of the verb "was".

Practice.—Explain why each of the following sentences is a simple sentence, and point out the noun phrase.

1. The young man refused to be led into the snare.
2. To err is human.
3. To wander through life without a care is not the dream of an energetic man.
4. His spirit was broken by being sent to a foreign land.
5. Many a man longs to be honored by his fellows.
6. To dream away the days in old libraries has always been my chief delight.
7. To be accounted a wag pleases some characters.
8. The General asked to be allowed to visit the hospital.
9. To throw all the visitors into hysterics delighted the mischievous youngster.
10. The chemist desired to study the minerals of the country.
11. To sweep past admiring throngs with her courtly cavalcade was the Duchess' chief delight.
12. To hear the empty applause of flatterers is with some people the only end of life.
13. Overcoming difficulties strengthens character.

* Longer phrases often contain within themselves shorter phrases. In these exercises in analysis, it will be well to have students first point out the entire phrase qualifying subject, verb, object, or agent. After the sentence has been analyzed to this extent, the teacher, if he think it profitable, may proceed to a more minute examination of each longer phrase, subdividing it into its component phrases, should it have such.

14. Some cities have been bettered by being burnt.
15. To wade through blood to victory seemed to be the ambition of Napoleon's life.

EXERCISE III*

Model.—The illustrious general defeated the enemy.

Remark.—In this simple sentence there is an adjective, "illustrious". It is an adjective because it expresses the quality of a noun, "general".

Practice.—Explain why each of the following sentences is a simple sentence. Point out any adjectives present, and explain why they are adjectives.

1. The long war distressed the poor.
2. The kind gentleman gave the poor beggar a generous gift.
3. The unhappy ruler found no pleasure in all his vast wealth.
4. Twenty people rushed forward to stay the hand of the mad assassin.
5. The gorgeous ball-room glittered with brilliant lights.
6. The sweet breezes from the evening sea cooled the fevered brow of the sick man.
7. The fitful light from the deserted rock ever and anon lit up the storm-swept pass.
8. The golden sunlight streamed in through the open windows of the little room.
9. The snow and sleet of the blizzard had blocked up traffic on all the lines.
10. A crew of fearless lifesavers went to the rescue of the distressed ship.
11. A countless host of savage barbarians swept down from the frozen North.

*The four following exercises are introduced here at the suggestion of teachers who have found by actual experience that it is very profitable to impress on pupils the function of a simple adjective and a simple adverb before proceeding to the exercises on adjective and adverbial phrases.

12. Columbus and his companions sailed out into an unknown sea.

13. The blue smoke from a settler's cabin showed above the distant horizon.

14. The lazy muleteers slept comfortably on their plodding beasts.

15. The sweet patience of the cheerful sufferer lightened the labor of the watchful nurses.

EXERCISE IV

Model.—The mists lifted lazily from the meadows.

Remark.—In this simple sentence there is an adverb “lazily”. It is an adverb because it expresses the manner of the verb “lifted”.

Practice.—Explain why each of the following sentences is a simple sentence. Point out in them any adverbs that qualify verbs, and explain how they qualify the verbs.

1. The pupils did not easily forget that lesson.
2. The daring bandit boldly faced his accusers.
3. The motorman barely escaped death.
4. The broncho struggled hard to escape.
5. One obstinate member almost destroyed all hope of peace.
6. A wild hurricane suddenly burst over the city.
7. The alarm bells rang wildly through the night.
8. A low moan came up softly from the depths of the sea.
9. The vast assembly enthusiastically applauded the idea.
10. A loud laugh grated harshly on the nerves of the mourners.

EXERCISE V

Model.—A very learned doctor addressed the congress.

Remark.—In this simple sentence there is an adverb, “very”. It is an adverb because it expresses a quality of the adjective “learned”.

Practice.—Explain why each of the following sentences is a simple sentence. Point out in them the adverbs that

qualify adjectives, and explain how they qualify the adjectives.

1. The proposition was not altogether absurd.
2. The ambassador was exasperatingly silent about his plans.
3. The verdict was surpassingly just.
4. The closely packed auditorium was stiflingly close.
5. The young man was easily victorious over his rather sluggish competitors.
6. The story of great enterprises is often remarkably interesting.
7. The house seemed too good for its surroundings.
8. The artist displayed a beautifully conceived picture.
9. The announcement of the great orator drew together an unusually brilliant assembly.
10. The possession of a very rich alluvial soil makes the valley remarkably fertile.

EXERCISE VI

Model.—The young man labored very hard.

Remark.—In this simple sentence there are two adverbs, the adverb “hard” qualifies the verb “labored”, and is in turn qualified by the adverb “very”.

Practice.—Explain why each of the following sentences is a simple sentence. Point out in them the adverbs, and explain the function of each.

1. Do not apply yourself too assiduously.
2. The moon shone brightly enough for the travelers.
3. The day passed even pleasantly.
4. The returns were made only slowly.
5. The clouds gathered ever so quickly.
6. The battered veteran and the young recruit got along together famously well.
7. Towards the end of his life the great man devoted himself quite unremittingly to his work.
8. Twenty men were talking very loudly at one and the same time.
9. The boy acquitted himself remarkably well.
10. The day was more than ordinarily warm.

EXERCISE VII

Model.—The miser, hungry for gold, snatched the glittering coin.

Remark.—In this simple sentence, there is a simple adjective phrase “hungry for gold”. It is a phrase because it is a collection of words containing no finite verb; an adjective phrase because it qualifies a noun, “miser”; a simple adjective phrase because it is introduced by an adjective.

Practice.—Explain why each of the following sentences is a simple sentence. Point out any simple adjective phrases present, and explain why they are adjective phrases.

1. The sun passed across the sky like a conqueror at his triumph.
2. Red in the light of the evening, the mountains gleamed in the west.
3. All the soldiers, confident of victory, followed their young leader.
4. The clouds, heavy with rain, stalked up from the east.
5. The moon played on the landscape, white with the first snow.
6. Queenly even at the moment of death, Mary Stuart yielded her neck to the executioner.
7. Eager for the fray, the war-horse bore on a rider sick at heart.
8. A gale, sweet with the breath of roses, was wafted in through the open window.
9. The messenger, muddy from his travel, was ushered into a salon brilliant with hundreds of lights.
10. A charger, gay with crimson trappings, was seen rushing madly over the field.
11. The earthquake overtook a party of pleasure-seekers thoughtless of danger.
12. They are unearthing at Pompeii many statues worth thousands of dollars.
13. Big houses, devoid of ornament, do not satisfy tastes awake to the charms of the artistic.
14. The pillar of cloud, invisible at night, was succeeded at sunset by a pillar of fire.
15. The sun looked down on a morning gray with mists.

16. The foundry, all ablaze in the midst of the night, was musical with the ringing of anvils.

17. The little band of patriots, ignorant of their own power, withstood an army invincible in a hundred battles.

18. Icicles, agleam with rainbow colors, hung on every tree and bush.

19. Our train traveled along the banks of a river yellow from contact with banks of gumbo.

20. We tramped through fields wet from recent rains.

21. The ambassadors, anxious to prevent a war, made concessions injurious to their own country.

22. The angry river, too big for its narrow channel, spread itself out over rich fields ripe for the harvest.

23. The thirteen colonies, strong only in their determination, resisted a power mighty in every element of war.

24. The mother gently laid in its cradle the child so dear to her heart.

25. On the very skirts of the cloud hung a rain-drop anxious to explore the fields below.

EXERCISE VIII

Model.—The dewdrop in the chalice of the lily looked like a pearl.

Remark.—In this simple sentence there is a prepositional adjective phrase, “in the chalice of the lily”. It is a phrase because it is a collection of words containing no finite verb; an adjective phrase because it qualifies the noun, “dew-drop”; a prepositional adjective phrase because it is introduced by a preposition.

Practice.—Explain why each of the following sentences is a simple sentence. Point out the prepositional adjective phrases, and show that each one is such.

1. The rift in the clouds admitted a ray of sunshine.
2. A cry from the expectant multitude announced the arrival of the king.
3. The trunk with the broken lock escaped the notice of the robbers.

4. The brigands in the mountain fastnesses often descend into the valleys for plunder.

5. The clouds before the setting sun were waving curtains of living fire.

6. The fort across the bay spat out a long tongue of fire.

7. The forest beneath the snowy peak was a green mass of nodding plumes.

8. The screech from the flying train woke the echoes in the quiet village at the foot of the bluff.

9. The water below the cataract swirled about in wild fury.

10. The silver rivers of low-hanging mist disappeared at sunrise.

11. The flags of twenty nations floated in the morning breeze.

12. The sentinel at the gate refused admission to the suspicious-looking stranger.

13. Thousands of pilgrims visit the little chapel on this old Roman road.

14. The gallant troops under the veteran commander attacked the almost impregnable position on the hill.

15. The water above the dam is a waveless mill-pond.

16. A policeman on a plunging horse kept back the crowd along the route of the procession.

17. The wheat on the rolling hills bent in golden waves before the wakening wind.

18. The light from the light-house threw a feeble glimmer across the rain-swept bay.

19. The veterans in their faded uniforms awoke a wild burst of enthusiasm in the loyal multitude.

20. The watchman on the mountain peak alarmed the burghers in the valley below.

21. A walk through the spring woods revived his flagging energies.

22. The Indians on their wiry ponies easily distanced the heavy mounts of the cavalry.

23. Our shrill chanticleer answered the challenges from the other farmyards.

24. A silver frost on the city's roofs belied the prediction of warmer weather.

25. A beam of moonlight through a window in the ruined wall lit up the tombstone on the hero's grave.

EXERCISE IX

Model.—The mother, weeping over the loss of her child, asked mercy for its father.

Remark.—In this simple sentence there is a participial adjective phrase, “weeping over the loss of her child”. It is a phrase because it contains no finite verb; an adjective phrase because it qualifies “mother”; a participial adjective phrase because it is introduced by a participle.

Practice.—Explain why each of the following sentences is a simple sentence. Point out the participial adjective phrases, and explain why each one is such.

1. The child, waving a danger signal, was seen by the pleasure-seekers rushing on to their destruction.
2. The water, trickling through the rotten dike, startled a peasant passing near-by.
3. A kind word often softens a heart hardened by every crime.
4. The citizens, reduced to starvation, accepted the terms offered by the besiegers.
5. The ships, exposed to the violence of the gale, were driven up on shore.
6. The cities, stricken by the fever, received help from the whole country.
7. The water, trickling down through the mosses, gradually wore away the solid rock.
8. The ships, riding at anchor in the quiet cove, were the targets of the enemy.
9. The smoke, curling through the evening air, announced the peasant's return.
10. The boat and its occupant, carried on by the rush of the waters, drew nearer and nearer to the brink of the precipice.
11. The cities visited by the tornado were never rebuilt.
12. The soldiers, marching through the narrow defile, were surprised by a deluge of stones.
13. The clouds, gathered in the west, presaged the coming of the storm.

14. The lava, rolling down the mountain side, overwhelmed hundreds of villages.

15. The French could not withstand the forces united against them at sunset.

16. Flowers, bought at enormous expense, adorned the banquet tables.

17. Discharged after many years of faithful service, the poor servitor had to find a refuge in the almshouse.

18. A soldier, issuing from the cloud of smoke, displayed a white flag.

19. Mountains, rolling away to the northward, protected the valley from the winter storms.

20. Napoleon, seeing the ruin of his hopes, tried to escape to America.

21. Stone bridges, constructed hundreds of years ago, still span the rivers in parts of Europe.

22. Wheat, sent from America, fed the peasants starving in hundreds of hamlets.

23. The wild geese, sailing to the South, were our first harbingers of winter.

24. The firemen, standing on the roof, were almost plunged into the fiery furnace.

25. The galley slave, chained to the deck, was dragged to death in the doomed trireme.

EXERCISE X

Model.—The General, commander of ten thousand men, could not command his own temper.

Remark.—In this simple sentence there is an appositional adjective phrase, “commander of ten thousand men”. It is a phrase because it contains no finite verb; an adjective phrase because it qualifies the subject “general”; an appositional adjective phrase because it is introduced by a noun.

Practice.—Explain why each of the following sentences is a simple sentence. Point out the appositional adjective phrases, and explain why each one is such.

1. Cuba, the pearl of the Antilles, was the prize of victory.

2. The troops captured Sitting Bull, the leader of the hostiles.

3. The shepherds brought back to the folds great flocks of sheep, the wealth of the village.

4. The white heifer, the pride of her mistress, had a ribbon tied round her neck.

5. The mountains, guardians of the land, stood forth against the attacks of the sea.

6. By his own confession, his First Communion day was the happiest in the life of Napoleon, the greatest military genius of modern times.

7. That city, the natural gateway to the Orient, is still in its infancy.

8. The young girl killed a mountain lion, the terror of the neighborhood.

9. Merlin, the wizard of King Arthur's court, was miserably outwitted.

10. Roland, the pride of France, died in the Vale of Thorns.

11. Thousands of martyrs, the first fruits of Christianity, died in the amphitheater at Rome.

12. The immense engine, a giant of its kind, stood ready for its trip.

13. Death snatched away a young man, the consolation of his widowed mother.

14. Black sails, the sign of defeat, flapped limply against the mast.

15. Two Sisters of Charity, angels from the battle-field, entered the Commissary's office.

16. They elected, as first President, George Washington, the Father of his Country.

17. The collie, the watchman of the herd, came barking at their heels.

18. Three boys, the leaders of the school, were sent up to the university to try for the scholarships.

19. The Boers killed thousands of men, the pick of the Queen's armies.

20. Our country faces a difficult problem, the settlement of the disputes between capital and labor.

21. That great enterprise, a monument to the energy of one man, has saved a city from commercial stagnation.

22. A trolley car, a sight so familiar to all of us, would have startled our ancestors.

23. He is now an old man, the idol of all the children.

24. The cotton, a crop usually of great value, was worthless that year.

25. Richard, a prisoner among his enemies, heard the sweet songs of his own minstrel.

EXERCISE XI

Model.—The Old Guard attacked the heights with their wonted energy.

Remark.—In this simple sentence there is an adverbial phrase “with their wonted energy”. It is an adverbial phrase because it qualifies the verb “attacked”.

Practice.—Point out why each of the following sentences is a simple sentence. Point out the adverbial phrases, and explain why each is such.

1. The defeated Americans fought with redoubled energy.
2. In one night the smiling plain was changed into a scene of desolation.
3. For the sake of money, he betrayed his friends to their enemies.
4. For twelve hours, the volcano belched forth lava with undiminished energy.
5. All day long the clouds were rolled in soft pink masses across the sky.
6. The party of marauders camped in the depth of the woods.
7. The stream ran along with a low, purling murmur.
8. The winter winds sighed in the leafless branches.
9. The purpling grapes hung in luscious clusters on the old arbor.
10. The moonlight fell on the old ruin.
11. Birds sang in the ivy-hung oaks.
12. The horse struggled with frantic efforts to unseat his rider.
13. Up and down the field the two teams pushed one another in the struggle for victory.
14. Hundreds of thousands perished in the wars of Napoleon.
15. With an angry menace, the master ordered the servant out of his sight.
16. The dying flame of day shot a ray through the chancel.
17. From a beaker full of the richest dyes, autumn pours a new glory on the woods.
18. The stars are mirrored in the tranquil lake.
19. The clouds far below my mountain lookout were bathed in light.
20. On sunny slope and beechen swell,
The shadowed light of evening fell.

21. Within the heavy folds of the roebuck's skin the warrior's weapons were laid.

22. The light spray hung in waving rainbows above the cataract.

23. Vogelweid the Minnesinger—

Laid his body in the cloister.

24. The old-fashioned country-seat stands back from the village street.

25. The rippling waters laughed in the golden sunshine.

26. In the Acadian land, on the shores of the basin of Minas,

. . . the little village of Grand-Pré

Lay in the fruitful valley.

27. Into the golden stream of the broad and swift Mississippi,

Floated a cumbrous boat.

28. The blast of the bugle rang through the leafy corridors of the dense forest.

29. A ruddy light shines in the fisherman's cottage.

30. A jolly band of merry travelers were gathered round the hearth of the ancient inn.

31. The ship leaped with one exultant bound into old ocean's arms.

32. The rocky ledge runs far into the sea.

33. The wild waves leaped over the ancient sea-wall with a mocking laugh.

34. Once into a quiet village,

Without haste and without heed,

In the golden prime of morning,

Strayed the poet's wingèd steed.

35. The drone of the bees was heard from the hundred hives.

36. The chieftain cowed the rebel crew with one imperious glance.

37. The witches muttered in a hollow voice a curse on their persecutors.

38. A milky whiteness spread across the maiden's cheek.

39. Through his love for adventure the young man was drawn into the enterprise.

40. The little chapel is built at the base of a beetling cliff.

41. To and fro in a room of his simple and primitive dwelling,—

Strode, with a martial air, Miles Standish, the Puritan Captain.

42. Back from the distant glen was borne the echo of the boatman's salute.

43. A heap of withered boughs was piled on the dying embers.

44. The murderer hid himself from the haunts of men.

45. In glad but rude procession came
Bonneted sire and coif-clad dame.
46. With the setting of the sun the screech-owl awakened in the depths of the black forest.
47. —Erect, at the outermost gates
Of the City Celestial he waits,
With his feet on the ladder of light.
48. The wind swept across the plain with a death-wail for the dying year.
49. Through the silent night there came to my ear the sweet voice of a tinkling stream.
50. In the midst of the strife and tumult of angry contention,
Lo! the door of the chancel opened.

EXERCISE XII

Practice.—Show why each of the following sentences is a simple sentence. Point out the various phrases, and explain why each is such.

1. A beautiful vase fell with a crash to the floor.
2. Walking slowly to the gate, he continued down the street.
3. The royal family rode to church in the state carriage.
4. Behind the clouds the sun is shining.
5. Does the tiger belong to the cat family?
6. In broad daylight, and at noon.
Yesterday I saw the moon
Sailing high, but faint and white.
7. Two angels, one of Life and one of Death,
Passed o'er our village.
8. And this song of the Vine,
This greeting of mine,
The winds and the birds shall deliver
To the Queen of the West,
In her garlands dressed,
On the Banks of the Beautiful River.
9. Reefs of coral show themselves suddenly above the water.
10. Under a spreading chestnut-tree
The village smithy stands.

11. Backward and forward before the gate walked a faithful sentinel.
12. At the close of day the weary tribes rested from their labors.
13. Do you see that beautiful bird in the thicket? *prep. adv. phrase*
14. Dark shadowy goblins danced on the walls lit by the glowing
fire.
15. Did you ever hear the lark singing from the clouds?
16. The leaves of the trees absorb the poisons in the air.
17. Moon and sky and stars were mirrored in the placid surface of the lake.
18. In the sweet month of June the roses bloom in every garden and in every meadow.
19. A last cry from the drowning man startled the awe-struck on-lookers.
20. The distressed families, left by the flood without home, were taken in by neighbors.
21. Trained in early girlhood at a country school of superior quality, my mother had learnt severely right principles of truth, charity, and housewifery.
22. Looking ahead of him down the valley, the hunter seated himself on the trunk of a fallen tree.
23. The myriad leaves of the underbrush and the lofty canopies of the trees were dyed with all the varied colors of an autumn day.
24. Patches of sumac stood out in bright red blotches against the gray of the cliff.
25. The wild vines, hanging from the tree, formed a tent beneath its branches.
26. —Autumn folds his jeweled arms
Around the dying year.
27. Near him stood the Lady of the Lake—
Clothed in white samite, mystic, wonderful.
28. Our chaise whirled rapidly over the frozen ground.
29. She came beneath the forest dome
To seek its peaceful shade,
An exile from her ancient home,
A poor, forsaken maid.
30. On reaching the church porch, we found the parson rebuking the gray-headed sexton for having used mistletoe among the decorations.
31. After elbowing their way through the damp bushes, the boys reached a hill overhanging the little river.
32. Lo! on he comes, behind his smoking team,

With toil's bright dew-drops on his sunburnt brow,
The lord of earth, the hero of the plough!

33. River!——

Four long years of mingled feeling,
Half in rest, and half in strife,
I have seen thy waters stealing
Onward, like the stream of life.

34. The stranger heard the sound of little feet pattering outside the door.

35. ——The fringe

Of that great breaker, sweeping up the strand,
Lashed at the wizard.

36. On sheltered banks, beneath the dripping eaves,
Spring's earliest nurslings spread their glowing leaves.

37. There was something extremely agreeable in the flow of animal spirits of the little man.

38. Birds of passage sailed through the leaden air from the ice-bound, desolate, northern bays to the shores of tropical islands.

39. In the center of the city of London lies a small neighborhood, called Little Britain.

40. A pin without a head is useless.

41. The two veterans beguiled the way with recollections of their military adventures.

42. Uplift a thousand voices full and sweet,
In this wide hall with earth's invention stored.

43. Filled with awe was Hiawatha
At the aspect of his father.

44. Alcuin taught the sons of Charlemagne in the free schools of Aix.

45. Patient and unrepining Elizabeth labored, in all things
Mindful not of herself, but bearing the burdens of others.

46. The very thought of jumping into the icy stream sent a shudder through the frame of the exhausted boy.

47. Why is the morning mist lying softly in the valley so heavy?

48. The golden cross of the old church was visible far out at sea.

49. For centuries the rivers have been washing the mountains down to the ocean.

50. Our young country has astounded the world by its progress.

51. Bravely the fire-fighters battled on through the smoke with their precious burdens.

52. Far up the lengthened lake were spied
Four darkening specks upon the tide.
53. The muffled tramp of a hundred men struck on the ear of the
watcher at the window.
54. Every morning the sun peeps through the latticed windows of the
grove.
55. The lightning rent the mighty oak into a thousand splinters.
56. The summer dawn's reflected hue
To purple changed Loch Katrine blue.
57. Myriads of caterpillars fed on the fruit trees in the old orchard.
58. Spreading his wings the eagle sailed majestically through the air.
59. The uppermost jets of spray rose like slow smoke above the un-
dulating line of the cataract.
60. My head grew dizzy with the hum of voices.
61. Over her head the stars, the thoughts of God in the heavens,
Shone on the eyes of man.
62. All through the darkness of the summer night the fireflies
gleamed.
63. ———On the western slope of these mountains
Dwells in his little village the Black Robe chief of the Mission.
64. The oak and birch, with mingled shade,
At noontide there a twilight made.
65. Out of the black cloud came bursts of spiry lightning.
66. The sun plunged down into the west, a red-hot ball.
67. A strong wind, coming up from the south, tore the crimson clouds
of sunset into floating rags.
68. Early in the spring the intrepid leader with only thirty chosen
men penetrated the country of the enemy.
69. Guided by a renegade Indian, the English penetrated, through
December snows, to this stronghold.
70. No murmur waked the solemn still,
Save tinkling of a mountain rill.
71. Softly through the evening from all the hamlets in the valley
came the sound of the Angelus.
72. A wild scream rang through the dark streets
73. —Far away to the south uprose
A little feather of snow-white smoke.
74. Opening his flask the compassionate youth poured all the water
down the poor dog's throat.
75. The rivers of peace through our valleys shall run

76. The loving children hovered about the chair of their invalid mother.

77. We were assisted in our work of civilization by steam-engines and threshing machines.

78. The settlers did not attempt conciliatory methods with their savage neighbors.

79. Winter snows, melting in the mountains, swelled the rivers beyond their banks.

80. All boys with any good in them are fond of boats.

81. I would pass entire days in rambling on the Cumberland hillsides.

82. At a word from the master the sails dropped rattling on the deck.

83. Out of the bosom of the air,

Out of the cloud-folds of her garments shaken,

Over the woodlands brown and bare,

Over the harvest fields forsaken,

Silent, and soft, and slow,

Descends the snow.

84. On beholding the destruction of their village, the warriors uttered yells of rage.

85. At anchor in Hampton Roads we lay,

On board the Cumberland, sloop-of-war.

86. The Governor came with his Light-horse Troop.

87. The little girl nursed a family of dolls in ragged dresses.

88. The white flowers shone like stars in the light of the early dawn.

89. Albert Dürer scarcely ever draws a scene in the life of the Virgin without putting into the foreground some idle cherubs.

90. Looking at the war ships in the offing, you can not distinguish the smaller guns.

91. I have been rather minute in drawing the pictures of these two families.

92. They had chosen for the poor man's grave one of the worst and most neglected corners of the churchyard.

93. I hear the wind among the trees

Playing celestial symphonies.

94. —Through a sapphire sea the sun

Sails like a golden galleon.

95. The brooklet came from the mountain,—

Running with feet of silver

Over the sands of gold.

96. Robert of Sicily, brother of Pope Urbane

And Valmond, Emperor of Allemaine,
Apparelled in magnificent attire,
With retinue of many a knight and squire,
On St. John's eve, at vespers, proudly sat.

97. The rain falling for many days turned even the best roads into quagmires.

98. The mistress of the world was on her knees before the subject nations.

99. In the one great battle of Hastings the power of the Saxons was broken.

100. Mute with amazement and sorrow, Priscilla the Puritan maiden
Looked into Alden's face, her eyes dilated with wonder.

EXERCISE XIII

Model.—After the hostile mountaineers had departed from the valley, it was a waste of smoking villages and ruined farms.

Remark.—This sentence contains two finite verbs “had departed” and “was”, therefore it can not be a simple sentence. Neither can it be a compound-complex sentence, since for a compound-complex sentence three verbs are required. It must, then, be either a compound or a complex sentence. To determine to which of these last two classes it belongs we must examine what relation the two clauses composing the sentence have to each other. It will be immediately evident that the clause “after”, etc. tells the time of the fact recorded in the other clause,—that it serves the purpose of an adverb with regard to that clause. It follows at once from the definitions above explained that this sentence must be complex.

Practice.—Explain the character of the clauses in the following sentences, and, therefore, the character of the sentences; point out the dependent clause, and explain its adverbial character.

N. B.—The adverbial clauses in this exercise are introduced by temporal, causal, conditional, and purpose conjunctions.

1. Many a year is in its grave
Since I crossed this restless wave.
2. If you desire the world's applause, you must earn it.
3. If your arguments produce no conviction, they are worth nothing to men.
4. When a deed is done for freedom, through the broad earth's
aching breast
Runs a thrill of joy prophetic, trembling on from east to west.
5. When honor dies, the man is dead.
6. Whene'er a noble deed is wrought,
* * * *
Our hearts in glad surprise
To higher levels rise.
7. While we commend the character of Washington to others, let us not forget to imitate it ourselves.
8. As by the shore, at break of day,
A vanquished chief expiring lay,
Upon the sands, with broken sword,
He traced his farewell to the free.
9. If all but myself were blind, I should want neither fine clothes, fine houses, nor fine furniture.
10. Were a star quenched on high,*
For ages would its light,
Still traveling downward through the sky,
Shine on our mortal sight.
11. The city was not in danger as long as the forts held out.
12. The laborers behaved well lest the troops might open fire.
13. The dam gave way because its foundations were old and weak.
14. As soon as the Germans under Blücher were seen approaching, Waterloo was won for the English.
15. The soldiers refused to go into battle unless their old commander were reinstated.

* It is to be borne in mind that the conjunction "if" of a conditional clause is often omitted in English. In these cases the character of the clause is indicated, however, by the conditional form of the verb.

16. The argument of the prosecution was weak in as much as the defense could prove an alibi.

17. The troops of the legations could not hold out until reënforcements arrived.

18. Whereas His Majesty refuses redress, we are obliged to forswear our allegiance.

19. We have harnessed the waterfall in order that we may have cheap power for our factories.

20. If the spring had not opened so early, the fruit trees would not have blossomed.

21. Before the English had fairly started, the Americans were being aroused to receive them.

22. I have no need of a secretary for I have a very small correspondence.

23. That the fire might not spread any farther, the firemen blew up the neighboring houses.

24. The farmer stood idly deploring his losses while the rain washed away his crops.

25. Should the temperature fall much to-night, the work will have to be discontinued.

26. After the rain beat down the crops, the sun burnt them into worthless straw.

27. The arid wastes of the west have become blooming gardens since irrigation has been introduced.

28. Since you will not listen to reason, you must bow to force.

29. An immense tidal wall has been built lest the sea again destroy the city.

30. Had you passed one moment later, the train would have crashed into your wagon.

31. "Hadst thou stayed, I must have fled!"

32. In as much as you show no good reasons, we will not accede to your demand.

33. As soon as the gun rang out, the whole town was awake.

34. While the lazy huckster drawled out his song, his horse drifted onward down the village street.

35. The colonists refused all offers of a compromise because they saw in them no hope of a permanent peace.

36. When the mist lifted, we could see the harbor and shipping.

37. If the wind had not veered to the north, we would have had a clear day.

38. The subordinate officers complained with reason for they **had** been treated with unexampled rigor.

39. The Americans cleaned up the cities of Cuba in order that the chance of a plague might be lessened.

40. As soon as the dogs came up with the deer, he turned upon them.

EXERCISE XIV

Model.—Cæsar was more successful than Pompey.

Remark.—Sentences expressive of comparison, though they often apparently have but one finite verb, are never simple sentences. There is always a verb understood or expressed after the particle of comparison, “than” or “as”. This verb after “than” or “as” gives the sentence at least two verbs, and, therefore, makes it at least a complex sentence. The clause after “than” or “as” is really the dependent clause because it expresses the degree of whatever is said in the principal clause and has, therefore, an adverbial force.

Practice.—Explain why each of the following sentences is complex; point out the dependent clause, and give the reason why it is such.

1. As the birds come in the spring,——
So come to the poet his songs.
2. The snow was falling, as if heaven dropped down
White flowers of Paradise to strew his pall.
3. It droppeth as the gentle rain from heaven.
4. The Romans were not more virtuous than the Greeks.
5. Many a boy loves his games better than his books.
6. A storm can ruin more in a night than a man can build in a year.
7. A fool can ask more questions than a wise man can answer.
8. The chances were as poor for us as they were splendid for them.
9. To-day is not nearly as bright as yesterday.
10. Many are more desirous of virtue than the miser of gold.
11. Patience gains more victories than ability.
12. Is the sunrise of life more glorious than its sunset?

13. Do not esteem a plodder less than a genius.

14. The merchants were put in possession of their goods sooner than they had expected.

15. Do not worry more about your body than about your soul.

EXERCISE XV

Model.—Every one said that the day was ideal.

Remark.—This is more than a simple sentence because it contains at least two finite verbs. That it is a complex sentence and not a compound sentence is evident from the fact that the clause “that the day was ideal” serves the purpose of a noun with regard to the clause “Every one said” because it expresses what was said, and is, therefore, really the object of the verb “said”. Clauses introduced by “that”, and serving as subjects or objects of other clauses are frequent in English.

Practice.—Explain why each of the following is a complex sentence, and explain the office of the “that” clause in the sentence.

1. The government declared that it would not prosecute the rebels.

2. That the early settlers found their path literally strewn with gold is admitted by all.

3. The history of all ages teaches that sooner or later the oppressed will wreak a terrible revenge on the oppressor.

4. The attorney for the defense established that his client had acted in self-defense.

5. That the sun revolves around the earth was long unknown.

6. His affability showed that he was adapted for the position.

7. That wealth can not purchase health is in evidence at every sanitarium.

8. That so many daring adventurers have attempted it in vain proves clearly enough the impossibility of a passage to the North Pole.

9. The nations of Europe will never be content that one of their number take undivided possession of China.

10. That strikes are so frequent shows very well the imperfection of our industrial conditions.

EXERCISE XVI

Model.—The Germans, whom Blücher commanded, eluded the French army appointed to intercept them.

Remark.—That this is more than a simple sentence is at once evident from the presence of the two finite verbs, “commanded” and “eluded”. The clause “whom Blücher commanded” is evidently dependent, since it fulfills the office of an adjective for the word “Germans”.

Practice.—Explain why each of the following sentences is complex; point out the dependent clause, and explain why it is dependent.

N. B.—Remember that there are relative adverbs, especially of place, as well as relative pronouns.

1. Thou art the ruins of the noblest man
That ever lived in the tide of the times.
2. There is a tide in the affairs of men,
Which, taken at the flood, leads on to fortune.
3. We know the master who laid your keel.
4. He placed himself in a position where he might be easily seen
by all.
5. Hands that the rod of empire might have swayed,
Close at my elbow stir the lemonade.
6. The sources whence all this information was derived were never
revealed.
7. He pointed out the man whom he had seen at the head of the
mob.
8. The man whose possessions had all been lost on that fatal night
seemed the most indifferent individual in the crowd.
9. The child had no difficulty in recognizing the man who had driven
the cab.
10. In that beautiful land which is washed by the Delaware's waters,
Guarding in sylvan shades the name of Penn, the apostle,
Stands on the banks of the beautiful stream his city.
11. The hut that had been built in the clearing was of the most
primitive construction.

12. The commander of the fort, whom I had met in my travels abroad, showed me the greatest hospitality.

13. The sailor whose acquaintance I had formed was very kind during the whole voyage.

14. He sent me a young man whose abilities he was able to recommend.

15. The yacht that had led during the greater part of the race was passed on the last day.

EXERCISE XVII

Practice.—* Analyze the following sentences, pointing out why they are complex, and explaining which are the dependent clauses and why. Many of the sentences contain clauses of a kind not exemplified in the previous exercises in complex sentences. Determine the dependent clause simply by the application of the general definition, that a dependent clause fulfills the office of noun, adjective, or adverb with regard to some word in another clause of the same sentence, or with regard to another clause in the same sentence.

1. I was loitering about the British Museum with that listlessness *adv* with which one is apt to saunter about a museum in warm weather.

2. The first duty of the commission was to inquire how means might *adv* be raised for the work.

3. There was an air of mystery about this cavalcade in black that piqued my curiosity.

4. Many a mile had they marched, when at length the village of *adv* Plymouth woke from its sleep.

5. The scouts inquired whether any signs of the enemy had been seen.

6. Our strength lay in this that the advancing columns were wholly *adv* unadvised of our position.

* Thus far in the analysis of complex sentences no demand has been made for an explanation of the *phrases* occurring. From Exercise XVII on, this explanation of phrases *should* be demanded, and, if the teacher wishes, he may require it in *all* the exercises on complex sentences.

7. After the sun had sunk down in the west, the valley was soon shrouded in darkness.

8. The floods cannot reach the barns and farm-houses because the peasants have wisely built these high up on the sides of the hills.

9. As the lightning flashed from the angry sky, the travelers caught a glimpse of the trail.

10. Why linger round the sunken wrecks

Where old Armadas found their graves?

11. It was early in the "leafy month of June" that I traveled through the beautiful province of Normandy.

12. The diligence was one of those ponderous vehicles which totter slowly along the paved roads of France.

13. Since the complications of labor and capital have become so frequent among us, many favor compulsory arbitration as a solution for our industrial problems.

14. As soon as the city began to grow, the wealthier inhabitants built themselves mansions out in the suburbs.

15. In every dingy village we thundered through, the postilion had a commission to execute.

16. What most attracted my attention was the grotesque appearance of the little musician.

17. When I had fully prepared myself for a ramble through the city, it was already sunset.

18. "While of ten thousand herds, there strays

But one along yon river's maze,—

The Gael, of plain and river heir,

Shall, with strong hand, redeem his share."

19. There was an air of antiquity about the whole city that breathed of the middle ages.

20. The picturesque remnant of old times into which I have thus beguiled the reader is called the Charter House.

21. Everybody was eager to learn how the affair had been brought to pass.

22. When I gazed on the stupendous architecture of the Church, I was transported back to the middle ages.

23. Far liefer had I fight a score of times.

Than hear thee so missay me.

24. As soon as the first ray of life shot across the eastern sky, the birds commenced their concert.

25. Almost every one was of the opinion that our safety lay in flight.

26. If walls had tongues as well as ears, what tales could they narrate!

27. After the clouds had traveled, the raindrops on the bushes shone like diamonds in the gleaming sunshine.

28. As the sun sank down behind the western hills, the tinkle of the cow-bells announced the home-coming of the herds.

29. The announcement that the great bank had failed started a panic in financial circles.

30. The visitors anxiously inquired how the invalids fared.

31. Around you lies a parched and sun-burnt plain, which, like the ocean, has no limits but the sky.

32. I was a little dubious whether it was not one of those apocryphal tales often passed off on travelers.

33. Had that hail fallen one week earlier, the crops of three counties would have been ruined.

34. We found a companion we had not expected.

35. Across the waste of the flood-water we could make out only one thing, that the farm-house still stood.

36. The whistle of the steamboat we were awaiting was heard down the river.

37. While the horses swept down the stretch to the stand, every man, woman, and child stood up shouting wildly for the favorite.

38. When o'er the street the morning peal is flung

From yon tall belfry with the brazen tongue,

Its wide vibrations, wafted by the gale,

To each far listener tell a different tale.

39. The children wondered what mysterious present the oaken box contained.

40. The belief that the world was flat was not easily eradicated from the minds of the people.

41. More things are wrought by prayer than this world dreams of.

42. The young king disapproved the plan his councilors had adopted.

43. The stranger from Mars naturally enough asked how the broom-stick on top dragged the trolley-car.

44. The young man indignantly denied the charge that he had tampered with the mails.

45. A star the astronomer had never seen before seemed to break forth from the blue vault above.

46. All you have said does not prove your competency.

47. Whoever wants glory must find it.

48. When the coast-dwellers heard the hoarse murmurs out at sea, they were filled with gloomy forebodings.

49. That he was not the favorite of all the electors did not enter into the mind of the young man.

50. "Soars thy presumption then so high,
Because a wretched kern ye slew,
Homage to name to Roderick Dhu?"

EXERCISE XVIII

Model.—I observed that all the farmer's listeners burst into laughter at his retorts before they could well understand them.

Remark.—This sentence has three finite verbs, "observed," "burst," "understand." Of the three clauses only one is principal. The sentence is, therefore, complex. Of the two dependent clauses the latter "before they", etc., evidently qualifies not the principal clause "I observed" but the dependent clause "that all", etc.

In complex sentences, containing more than one dependent clause, the extra clauses sometimes qualify the principal clause, and sometimes qualify another dependent clause.

Practice.—Analyze the following complex sentences indicating and proving the order of dependence in the dependent clauses.

1. The mountain sides are black with pines that run down to the edge of a little stream which empties into the Guadalquivir.

2. As my companion went off, I heard him putting questions to a passenger who had alighted with him.

3. I have sometimes thought that I could not have existed in a village where one of those old-time witches was reputed to live.

4. Parents do not know what they do when they leave tender babes alone to go to sleep in the dark.

5. After we had journeyed forward for a few more hours, we stood looking down on the broad, luxuriant valleys which were bathed in the splendors of an Andalusian sunset.

6. In the pavement is a trapdoor opening into a dungeon which occupies all the lower part of the tower, and which formerly had no entrance save this trapdoor.

7. It is plain that the gentle and humble-minded Gregory was unequal to the government of the Church and province of Constantinople, which were as unworthy as they were impatient of him.

8. This personage was a sexagenarian with whom I became acquainted while I was stopping at Auteuil.

9. The inn-keeper was not too anxious for our company because he knew that there were travelers coming who would pay more for his accommodations than we.

10. It so happens that we have a vast deal of Gregory's poetry, which he doubtless never intended for publication, but which formed the recreation of his retirement.

11. The stripling walked into the woods where the bluebirds and robins were building the nests which would be the cradles of their offspring.

12. What hue shall paint the mocking light
That burned and stained the orient skies
Where peaceful morning loves to rise,
As if the sun had lost his way
And dawned to make a second day!

13. After his father died, this old gentleman was established in an inheritance which would have kept him in easy circumstances, had he not risked it in speculations which proved unfortunate.

14. In all that great cemetery which has been receiving the dead for two centuries, there is not a grave which is not kept fresh and green.

15. As I gazed on the sculptured forms of the dead before me, and at the little chapel, whose Gothic roof seemed to protect their marble sleep, my busy memory swung back the dark portals of the past.

16. He who sins in the broad noonday of a clear and radiant mind, when at length the delirium of passion has subsided, and the cloud flits from before the sun, trembles beneath the searching eye of a conscience which is strong in the strength of a godlike intellect.

17. I soon found myself in the deep shade of heavy foliage, where the branches of the yew and willow mingled and were interwoven with the tendrils and blossoms of the honeysuckle.

18. The rich man, who would not walk the streets with the starving and penniless man of genius, deems it an honor, when death has

exalted the name of the neglected sage, or poet, that his own ashes should be laid beside him.

19. As I passed on amid the shady avenues of the famous village, I could not help comparing my impressions with those which others had felt when they walked among the same scenes.

20. A small village that is not mentioned in the guide-book stands upon the precipitous banks of a deep ravine through which a noisy brook leaps down to turn the ponderous wheel of a thatch-roofed mill.

21. As we followed a well-trodden path through the vineyard, we were descending the valley's slope to find ourselves suddenly in one of those little hamlets from which the laborer rises to his toil as the skylark to his song.

22. After I had walked many miles along the dusty highway, I crossed the river in a boat to a little village which lies amid luxuriant vineyards upon the southern bank of the Loire.

23. Those who were untaught in scholastic wisdom were learned in traditionary lore, for they had their ballads in which were described the valor and achievements of the early kings of the Franks.

24. John of Antioch, who from his eloquence was called Chrysostom, was approaching sixty years of age, when he had to deliver himself up to the imperial officers, and to leave Constantinople for a distant exile.

25. I need hardly allude to the heroic Popes who patiently lived on in the Crimea, till a martyrdom, in which they had no part but the suffering, released them.

26. I believe with the Persians that ten measures of talk were sent down from heaven, and that the ladies took nine.

27. Still more surprised were they to learn that, in order to have bread, wheat must be sown; that grass was necessary for the production of milk; and that wine did not flow from casks on turning the key.

28. I observe that men run away to other countries because they are not good in their own, and run back to their own because they pass for nothing in the new place.

29. Whilst we want cities as the centers where the best things are found, cities degrade us by magnifying trifles.

30. I thought that ten thousand swords must have leaped from their scabbards to avenge even a look that threatened her with insult.

31. "Here, while his brethren stood aloof,

The herald's blast was blown

That shook St. Stephen's pillared roof

And rocked King George's throne!"

32. Enchanter of Erin, whose magic has bound us,
Thy wand for one moment we fondly would claim,
Entranced while it summons the phantoms around us
That blush into life at the sound of thy name.

33. Cicero, even though he had the choice of a home and the prospect of a return from banishment, roamed disconsolate through the cities of Greece, because he was debarred access to the senate-house and forum.

34. We shall be very wrong if we suppose that fine expressions, or rounded periods, or figures of speech were the credentials by which Chrysostom claimed to be the first doctor of the East.

35. The long prevalent theory, that the romances of the Twelve Peers of France all originated in the fabulous chronicle of Charlemagne and Roland, written by Archbishop Turpin in the twelfth century, if not as yet generally exploded, is nevertheless fast losing ground.

36. As day was drawing to a close, and the rays of the setting sun climbed slowly up the dungeon wall, the prisoner sat reading in a heavy tome.

37. While we were at breakfast, a personage stalked into the room, whose strange appearance arrested my attention, and gave subject for future conversation to our party.

38. Through a valley which, as tourists tell us, rose and fell through a succession of wild crags and distant peaks, the traveler journeyed till at length he reached a cultivated tract, and then a forest region.

39. That the sight of a steamship would have amazed the first colonist who came to our shores cannot be doubted by anybody who has noticed the wonder displayed by men of our own day when they come upon new inventions for the first time.

40. The poor man refused the proffered help because he could not persuade himself but that those who offered him money needed it as sorely as himself.

41. I did not know that the worry written on my countenance had aroused the attention of any of my friends until one day last month, when one of my more intimate acquaintances directly taxed me with my gloomy looks, and frankly inquired the cause of them.

42. It is very observable that, in spite of the indescribable confusion of the populations through which he passed, Christian zeal and charity did not allow their personal sufferings to interfere with the homage and respect due from them to the presence of so illustrious a confessor as was John Chrysostom.

43. As soon as the distant roar reached their ears, the inhabitants of the little village were filled with consternation, because they knew that that hoarse sound was the rush of waters from the upper dam.

44. The colonists declared that, since they had no representative in the English legislative bodies, those bodies had no right to impose taxes on them.

45. If his patients had been more discerning, they would have discovered that the great physician cured more by his kindness than by his skill in medicine.

46. When the great earthquake wrecked San Francisco, buildings, which had been raised on made ground, were readily shaken to pieces.

47. I know not whither his hobby would have carried the old gentleman, had not a thin man with a black, seedy coat, who sat at my elbow, at that moment interrupted him.

48. It is over this little territory, which is thus bounded and designated, that the great dome of St. Paul's looks down with an air of motherly protection.

49. Affairs were at this pass when, one afternoon, as the notary sat moping in his office, a loud knocking at the door awaked him from his gloomy reverie.

50. The scene was enlivened by the dashing of a swollen mountain brook, whose course we followed for miles down the valley, as it leaped onward to its journey's end.

EXERCISE XIX

Model.—Truth, crushed to earth, shall rise again;
But Error, wounded, writhes in pain,
And dies among his worshippers.

Remark.—It is evident that this sentence contains three finite verbs, and is therefore more than a simple sentence. Upon examination of the clauses, and a recurrence to the definitions, we will find that all the clauses are independent. The sentence is, therefore, compound.

Practice.—Examine the following sentences; explain why they are compound.

1. Come, and see my beautiful flowers.

2. Trust men, and they will be true to you; treat them gently, and they will show themselves great.

3. I was too late for the train. so I returned home.

4. Clever men are desirable, but good men are more desirable.

5. I have found you an argument, but I am not obliged to find you an understanding.

6. A tart temper never mellows with age, and a sharp tongue grows keener with constant use.

7. A moral, sensible, and well-bred man

Will not affront me, and no other can.

8. The hearts of men are their books, events their tutors, and great actions are their eloquence.

9. The boat reappeared, but brother and sister had gone down in an embrace never to be parted.

10. Night's silvery veil hung low on Jordan's bosom, and the eddies curled their glassy rings beneath it.

11. The wise man's eyes are in his head, but the fool walketh in darkness.

12. Straws swim upon the surface, but pearls lie at the bottom.

13. Reading maketh a full man; conversation, a ready man; and writing, an exact man.

14. Great nature spoke; observant man obeyed;

Cities were formed; societies were made.

15. Cæsar was an able commander, and had the support of devoted legions.

16. This is the arsenal; from floor to ceiling,

Like a huge organ, rise the burnished arms.

17. Ring out the old, ring in the new,

Ring, happy bells, across the snow;

The year is going, let him go;

Ring out the false, ring in the true.

18. Now fades the glimmering landscape on the sight,

And all the air a solemn stillness holds.

19. The snow lay in great heaps in the deep ravines, and chilly winds whistled and moaned through the naked tree-tops.

20. Men may come, and men may go, but I go on forever.

21. But we steadfastly gazed on the face of the dead,

And we bitterly thought of the morrow.

22. Neither locks had they to their doors, nor bars to their windows.

But their dwellings were open as day and the hearts of the owners.

23. Charcoal and the diamond are very unlike, yet they are composed of the very same substance.

24. The army of the enemy swept over the face of that fairyland, and in its path followed famine and pestilence.

25. No two watches go just alike, yet each believes his own.

26. The way was long, the wind was cold,
The minstrel was infirm and old.

27. White as a sea-fog, landward bound,
The spectral camp was seen,
And, with a sorrowful, deep sound,
The river flowed between.

28. Through the long reach of desert woods,
The embracing sunbeams chastely play,
And gladden these deep solitudes.

29. Heaven's wide arch
Was glorious with the sun's returning march,
And woods were brightened, and soft gales
Went forth to kiss the sun-clad vales.

30. They buried the dark chief; they freed
Beside the grave his battle steed;
And swift an arrow cleaved its way
To his stern heart.

31. You go one way; I will go the other.

32. Colder and louder blew the wind,
A gale from the Northeast,
The snow fell hissing in the brine,
And the billows frothed like yeast.

33. At last young April, ever frail and fair,
In tears and blushes sighs herself away,
And hides her cheek beneath the flowers of May.

34. The curtain rose; in thunders long and loud
The galleries rung; the veteran actor bowed.

35. The food was scant, the fruits were few;
A red-streak glistening here and there;
Perchance in statelier precincts grew
Some stern old Puritanic pear.

36. But ever on the bleakest rock
We bid the brightest beacon glow,
And still upon the thorniest stock
The sweetest roses love to blow.

37. The creature laid his muzzle on your lap,
And sobbed, and you sobbed with it, and the blood
Was sprinkled on your kirtle, and you wept.

38. The monks were not dreamy sentimentalists to fall in love with melancholy winds, and purling rills, and waterfalls, and nodding groves; but their poetry was the poetry of hard work and hard fare, unselfish hearts and charitable hands.

39. Sturm was seized with a desire of founding a religious house in the wilds of pagan Germany; and setting out with two companions, he wandered for two days through the Buchonian forest, and saw nothing but earth, sky, and large trees.

40. Anon the bell from the belfry
Rang out the hour of nine, the village curfew, and straightway
Rose the guests, and departed; and silence reigned in the household.

EXERCISE XX

Model.—Attack is the reaction, and I never think that I have hit hard unless the missile rebounds.

Remark.—It is evident from a reference to the definitions that this is a compound-complex sentence.

Practice.—Explain why each of the following is a compound-complex sentence; point out the independent clauses, and the order of dependence in the dependent clauses.

1. Whittier lives at Amesbury near the beautiful Merrimac that he loved in his youth, and he will probably remain there till he dies.

2. Since the invention of the telegraph, East exchanges thoughts with West every day, and all the world are neighbors.

3. Upon the hearth blazed a handful of fagots, whose bright flame danced merrily among a motley congregation of pots and kettles, and a long wreath of smoke wound lazily up through the huge tunnel of the roof above.

4. The walls were black with soot, and ornamented with sundry legs of bacon and festoons of sausages; and as there were no windows in the dingy abode, the only light which cheered the darkness within came flickering from the fire upon the hearth, and the smoky sunbeams that peeped down the long-necked chimney.

5. Our conversation was cut short by the driver of the diligence, who came to tell us that the mules were waiting; and before many hours had elapsed, we were scrambling through the square of the ancient city of Burgos.

6. The tessellated shadow of the honeysuckle lies motionless upon the floor, as if it were a figure in the carpet, and through the open window comes the fragrance of the wild-brier and the mock-orange.

7. The birds are caroling in the trees, and their shadows flit across the window as they dart to and fro in the sunlight.

8. The ruins of Christian castle and Moorish alcazar still look forth from the hills of Spain; but where, oh, where is the spirit of freedom that once fired the children of the Goth?

9. A tailor's drawer is the title which the Spaniards give to a desultory discourse, and it is not an inappropriate caption for a chapter whose contents are of every shape and hue.

10. My apartments were in the third story above the dust, though not above the rattle of the street; and my balconies looked down into the Puerta del Sol, the heart of Madrid, through which circulates the living current of its population at least once every twenty-four hours.

11. Glorious is it, when the eagle through the beating tempest flies into the bright blue heaven upward; but far more glorious, when, poising in the blue sky over the black storm-abyss, he plunges downward to his aerie on the cliff where cower his unfledged brood.

12. The mob threatened to beat even the soldiers of the prefecture; and boasted that many were the prefect's soldiers before now whom they had badly worsted.

13. The mayor of the city also heard what was going on, and he hastened to the point of danger; but the infuriated men would not listen to his entreaties, and he too was unsuccessful.

14. Evetius dismounted, and got hold of me; and thus I was assisted or rather dragged forward; for I could not possibly walk on such difficult ground, amid formidable mountains, and in the middle of the night.

15. Joy smiles in the fountain, health flows in the rills,
As their ribbons of silver unfold from the hills;
They breathe not the mist of the bacchanal's dream,
But the lilies of innocence float on their stream.

16. The apothecary is a great reader of almanacs and newspapers, and is much given to pore over alarming accounts of plots, conspiracies, fires, earthquakes, and volcanic eruptions; which last phenomena he considers as signs of the times.

17. The oracle of the club is the tailor and his declarations are disputed but seldom even by the cheesemonger, who lives in a fragment of one of the old family mansions, and is as magnificently lodged as a round-bellied mite in the midst of one of his own Cheshires.

18. The inn-keeper's ancestors were all wags before him, and he has inherited with the inn a large stock of songs and jokes, which go from generation to generation as heirlooms.

19. There is an exaggeration in the Spanish ballads of the Twelve Peers of Charlemagne, which is in accordance with the warmth of a Spanish imagination; and the presence of this exaggeration is perhaps one of the reasons why the ballads are still hawked about the streets by the blind ballad-monger.

20. I had already seen enough of the villages of the North to know that they have few charms to entice one from the city; but I was curious to see how like the peasants of the South would be to the pictures I had formed of them.

21. Instead of trim cottages, built in the grateful shade of trees, the traveler will see a cluster of stone hovels baking in the sun; and instead of green meadows and woodlands vocal with the song of birds, he will find bleak and rugged mountains that stretch away beyond his ken.

22. Speak clearly, if you speak at all;

Carve every word before you let it fall.

23. It is another's fault, if he be ungrateful; but it is mine, if I do not give.

24. A little weeping would ease my heart

But in their briny bed

My tears must stop, for every drop

Hinders needle and thread.

25. Sin has many tools, but a lie is a handle which fits them all.

26. The children laugh loud as they troop at his call,

And the poor man that knows him laughs loudest of all.

27. Thus came the jocund spring in Killingworth,

In fabulous days some hundred years ago;

And thrifty farmers, as they tilled the earth,

Heard with alarm the cawing of the crow,

That mingled with the universal mirth.

28. The hour was late; the fire burned low;

The Landlord's eyes were closed in sleep,

And near the story's end a deep

Sonorous sound at times was heard,
As when the distant bagpipes blow.

29. Then one by one the guests came down,
And greeted with a smile the squire,
Who sat before the parlor fire.

30. Chrysostom reached his place of exile faint and exhausted in body and soul; but, as was usual with him, he soon rallied, and began to color everything about him with his own sweet, cheerful, thankful temper.

31. Now through rushing chutes, among green islands, where plume-like

Cotton-trees nodded their shadowy crests, they swept with the current,

Then emerged into broad lagoons, where silvery sandbars
Lay in the stream.

32. The day was passed with any idle companion I was lucky enough to bribe with a cigar into a long story, and I whiled away the evening studying the landscape that spread before me.

33. When the chant was finished, the priest opened a little book which he held in his hand, and began to question the children in the catechism.

34. Nearly seventy days I spent on the journey, and at length I reached this village, which is the most desolate place in the whole world.

35. Speak the speech, I pray you, as I pronounced it to you, trippingly on the tongue; but, if you mouth it, as many of your players do, I had as lief the town-crier spoke my lines.

36. I believe that I have suffered the worst that it is possible for me to suffer, and I ask you this favor,—that you write frequently for my consolation in exile.

37. Two eminent statesmen, who were brave enough to side with the fallen favorite, were first imprisoned, and then sent into banishment.

38. One of the lecturers, a delicate youth, was put on the rack, torn with hooks, scourged, and then scorched with torches until he died.

39. I did not quarrel with the man because he differed with me in opinion, but I could not help feeling sad that so brilliant a mind was being wasted on trifles.

40. On Sundays and all other holidays, when Mass was over, the time was devoted to sports and recreation; and the day was passed in social visiting and athletic exercises.

41. Let them come, if they like, and the sooner they try it the better.
42. The Khan from his palace-window gazed,
And saw in the thronging street beneath,
In the light of the setting sun that blazed
Through the clouds of dust by the caravan raised,
The flash of harness and jeweled sheath,
And the shining scimiters of the guard.
43. Most of the tales were about the Moors who built the castle,
and many of them concerned the treasure they had buried beneath it.
44. Serapion, Bishop of Heraclea, who had made himself especially
obnoxious to the schismatical party, was scourged, tortured, and
banished.
45. The corner towers are circular, with beetling turrets; and here
and there, apart from the main body of the castle, stand several cir-
cular basements, whose towers have fallen and moldered into dust.
46. The Primate endeavored to secure the nomad Goths a successor
for their Bishop, who was lately dead; and he wrote on this subject
to some of their race, who were in a monastery at Constantinople.
47. Not only are the poet's lips touched with a coal from the altar;
but his spirit is folded in the cloud of incense that rises from the shrines
of the Virgin Mother, and of the glorious company of the saints and
martyrs.
48. As died the sounds upon the tide,
The shallop reached the mainland side,
And ere his onward way he took,
The stranger cast a lingering look,
Where easily his eye might reach
The harper on the islet beach,
Reclined against a blighted tree
As wasted, gray, and worn as he.
49. This noble man redeemed from slavery many who had been taken
captives by the sea-robbers, and sent them to their homes.
50. And when the kings were in the field,—their squadrons in array,—
With lance in rest they onward pressed to mingle in the fray;
But soon upon the Christians fell a terror of their foes,—
These were a numerous army,—a little handful those.
51. The war pipes ceased, but lake and hill
Were busy with their echoes still;
And, when they slept, a vocal strain
Bade their hoarse chorus wake again.

52. The stranger made a leg, and accepted these signs of good company with the easy air of a man who is accustomed to earn his livelihood by hook or by crook.

53. Nothing that my persecutors have been able to do has availed to destroy me; but I am in much better health than I was formerly, though I then took such care of myself.

54. The notion prevailed that the colonies might be utilized for clearing the mother-country of jail-birds and paupers, and it remained for the Plymouth settlers to demonstrate that only the honest and thrifty can work out the salvation of a wilderness.

55. Her lever was the wand of art,
Her fulcrum was the human heart,
Whence all unfailing aid is.

56. The villages we passed through were poverty-stricken and half-depopulated; and the squalid inhabitants wore a look of misery that made the heart ache.

57. Yes, he was a great and good man; nor is there anything in his life, as it has come down to us, to forbid our saying that he was as genuine a hero as many whose names are written large on the pages of history.

58. Some feelings are to mortals given,
With less of earth in them than heaven;
And if there be a human tear
From passion's dross refined and clear,
A tear so limpid and so meek,
It would not stain an angel's cheek,
'Tis that which pious fathers shed
Upon a duteous daughter's head.

59. It was Saturday night; and, as the gathering twilight fell around us, a loud peal of bells rang forth its glad welcome to the day of rest.

60. The hermit made the sign of the cross over her, and she returned home healed in body and soul, and, either at once, or as time went on, gave herself up to an ascetic life.

61. While his parents lived Theodoret lived with them, and lived as became one who had been dedicated from the first to a divine life.

62. Generations perish, like the leaves of the forest, passing away when their mission is completed; but at each succeeding spring, broader and higher spreads the human mind unto its perfect stature.

63. I stood at midnight on the wide terrace of our hotel, which overlooks the sea, and, gazing on the tiny and crisping waves that broke

in pearly light beneath the moon, I sent back my wandering thoughts far over the sea to a distant home.

64. Sir Roderick, who to meet them came,
Reddened at sight of Malcolm Graeme
Yet not in action, word, or eye,
Failed aught in hospitality.

65. The Mynheers would have told you to be cautious what you said,

Or else decreed that silver tongue of yours should cost your head.

66. But while Geraint lay healing of his hurt,
The blameless king went forth and cast his eyes
On each of all whom Uther left in charge.

67. I descended from the terrace, and, groping my way through one of the dark and narrow lanes which intersect the city in all directions, soon found myself in the Strada Nuova.

68. The Roman State had adopted Christianity as its religion, but the populations which the State embraced had still to be converted.

69. A dazzling blaze of light from the high altar shone upon the red marble columns which support the roof, and fell with a solemn effect upon the kneeling crowd that filled the body of the church.

70. Thereafter, when a King, he had the gems
Plucked from the crown, and showed them to his knights.

71. In talk and sport they whiled away
The morning of that summer day;
But at high noon a courier light
Held secret parley with the knight,
Whose moody aspect soon declared,
That evil were the news he heard.

72. I go the patient crowd to join
That round the tube my eyes discern,
The last new-comer of the file,
And wait, and wait, a weary while.

73. The houses in Genoa are high, and the streets in general so narrow that in many of them you may almost step across from side to side.

74. Midsummer has come; and you may now hire a palace for what, a few weeks ago, would hardly have paid your night's lodging in its garret.

75. That country was, and is, we are told, endowed with a rich loamy soil, as fine as garden mold, in which it is difficult to find even a pebble.

76. "Brave Roderick, though the tempest roar,
It may but thunder and pass o'er;
Nor will I here remain an hour,
To draw the lightning on thy bower."

77. And when King Arthur made
His Table Round, and all men's hearts became
Clean for a season, surely he had thought
That now the Holy Grail would come again;
But sin broke out.

78. Such was the mansion where the great man dwelt,
A widower and childless; and he felt
The loneliness, the uncongenial gloom,
That like a presence haunted every room.

79. To the fertility of this plain three streams contribute; and were it not oppressed by a stupid barbarian rule, and trampled under foot by the nomad Turcomans, Kurds, and Arabs, it would be able, as travelers report, to grow grain enough for the whole of Syria.

80. At midnight, when the crowd is gone, I retire to my chamber, and, poring over the gloomy pages of Dante, protract my nightly vigil until the morning star is in the sky.

81. Yet slow he laid his plaid aside,
And, lingering, eyed his lovely bride,
Until he saw the starting tear
Speak woe he might not stop to cheer.

82. On our way to town we had to pass a little river, and, while we were on the bridge that spanned it, we heard the church bells ringing merrily.

83. I have no time to push my argument further, but I have said enough to prove that education is something more than mere book-learning.

84. The man had been a solitary for many years, and could dispense with the company of his fellows; but, if he must give up his seclusion for company, he might naturally wish that company to be good of its kind.

85. A friend from my native land was with me; and, as we spake of home, a liquid star stood trembling like a tear upon the closing eyelid of the day.

86. A soldier walked to and fro on guard, and of him I asked at what hour the regiment would drill.

87. Had Theodoret been kept back at Antioch for half a dozen

years, he might have followed Chrysostom to Constantinople, and have been placed upon its patriarchal throne, instead of the unhappy Nestorius.

88. The moon is full and bright, and the shadows lie so dark and massive in the street that they seem a part of the walls which cast them.

89. I gave the spaniel a morsel of bread, which he swallowed without so much as moving his long silken ears; and keeping his soft, beautiful eyes fixed upon mine, he thumped upon the floor, as if knocking for the waiter of the inn.

90. The scene of half the Aeneid is spread before you; and it would take volumes to describe each point that arrests the eye in this magnificent panorama.

91. In that little village the young man did his best; but where in such an out of the way place could he find the listeners, the applause, the fame, which awaited him, he was sure, in the capital?

92. As oft we see the sky in May
Threaten to rain, and yet not rain,
The Poet's face, before so gay,
Was clouded with a look of pain,
But suddenly brightened up again.

93. He climbed to the top of the mountain, and looked down into the valley on the other side where the smoke from villages, and towns, and cities told him of the bustling life in which he had never mingled.

94. When they had drunk the King, with many a cheer,
The Governor whispered in a servant's ear,
Who disappeared, and presently there stood
Within the room, in perfect womanhood,
A maiden, modest and yet self-possessed.

95. As I stood leaning over the balcony of the convent, giving myself up to those reflections which the scene inspired, one of the brotherhood came from a neighboring cell, and entered into conversation with me.

96. The vesper bell tolled, and, ere its echoes died away along the hills, another angel had been added to the hosts that kneel in adoration around the great White Throne.

97. The setting sun seemed to melt away in the sky, dissolving into a golden rain that bathed the whole Campagna with unearthly splendor, and Rome in the distance, half-hidden, half-revealed, lay floating like a mote in the broad and misty sunbeam.

98. In the fifth century, Bishops were great secular magistrates and, whether they would or no, were involved in secular occupations.

99. Beneath you winds the lordly Danube, and all around, the landscape is bounded by forest-covered hills which are topped by the moldering fragments of feudal castles, or the tapering spires of village churches.

100. When I stood by the seashore, and listened to the melancholy and familiar roar of its waves, it seemed but a step from the threshold of a foreign land to the fireside of home; and when I watched the outbound sail, fading over the water's edge, and losing itself in the blue mists of the sea, my heart went with it, and I turned away fancy-sick with the blessings of home and the endearments of domestic love.

PART III

SENTENCE-BUILDING

* EXERCISE I

Model:

Ind. Pres.	—I study English.
Imp.	—I studied English.
Perf.	—I have studied English.
Plup.	—I had studied English.
Fut.	—I shall <i>or</i> will study English.
Fut. Perf.	—I shall <i>or</i> will have studied English.
Pot. Pres.	—I may, can study English.
Imp.	—I might, could, would study English.
Perf.	—I may, can, must have studied English.
Plup.	—I might, could, would, should have studied English.

Practice.—Change verb of following simple sentences through all the active tenses of the Indicative and Potential Moods.

1. Thou workest hard.
2. The President governs this country.
3. We love peace.
4. You hate your foes.
5. The soldiers carry weapons.
6. The old volcano shows signs of life.

* Exercises 1-14 are not really exercises in sentence-structure, but rather preliminaries to that work which have been found necessary in many classes, and which are inserted here at the request of practical teachers. Where they are not needed, teachers may omit them, and begin with Exercise 15.

7. Learned men command respect.
8. We do not fear boasters.
9. You admire the deeds of the brave.
10. Thou seekest worthless treasures.
11. I own those splendid horses.
12. Patriots love their flag.

EXERCISE II

Model:

- | | |
|------------|--|
| Ind. Pres. | —I am studying English. |
| Imp. | —I was studying English. |
| Perf. | —I have been studying English. |
| Plup. | —I had been studying English. |
| Fut. | —I shall <i>or</i> will be studying English. |
| Fut. Perf. | —I shall <i>or</i> will have been studying English. |
| Pot. Pres. | —I may be, I can be studying English. |
| Imp. | —I might be, could be, would be studying English. |
| Perf. | —I may, can, must have been studying English. |
| Plup. | —I might, could, would, should have been studying English. |

Practice.—Change the verbs of each of the sentences of Ex. I to Pres. Ind. of this compound form and then change this Pres. Ind. through all the tenses of the Ind. and Pot. Act.,—as in model.

EXERCISE III

Model:

- | | |
|------------|---|
| Ind. Pres. | —Do I study English? |
| Imp. | —Did I study English? |
| Perf. | —Have I studied English? |
| Plup. | —Had I studied English? |
| Fut. | —Shall I <i>or</i> will I study English? |
| Fut. Perf. | —Shall I <i>or</i> will I have studied English? |

Pot. Pres.	—May I, can I study English?
Imp.	—Might I, could I, would I study English?
Perf.	—May I, can I, must I have been studying English?
Plup.	—Might I, could I, should I, would I have been studying English?

Practice.—Change the verbs of each sentence in Ex. I to the interrogative form of the Pres. Ind. and then change this Pres. Ind. through all the tenses of the Indicative and Potential.—as in model.

EXERCISE IV

Model:

Ind. Pres.	—John is praised by all his friends.
Imp.	—John was praised by all his friends.
Perf.	—John has been praised by all his friends.
Plup.	—John had been praised by all his friends.
Fut.	—John shall <i>or</i> will be praised by all his friends.
Fut. Perf.	—John shall <i>or</i> will have been praised by all his friends.
Pot. Pres.	—John may, can be praised by all his friends.
Imp.	—John might, could, would, should be praised by all his friends.
Perf.	—John may, can, must have been praised by all his friends.
Plup.	—John might, could, would, should have been praised by all his friends.

Practice.—Change all the verbs of the following sentences through all the tenses of the Indicative and Potential Passive.

1. Carthage is destroyed by the Romans.
2. We are hated more than any people on earth.
3. Thou art despised by all.
4. Americans are known as the greatest inventors of the time.
5. I am elected mayor of this city.

6. Napoleon is called the greatest general of the modern world.
7. Poets are never honored in their lifetime.
8. We are accused of ambition.
9. I am forbidden the place.
10. You are called to high honors.

EXERCISE V

Model:

- Ind. Pres. —John is being praised by all his friends.
 Imp. —John was being praised by all his friends.
 Perf. —John has been being praised by all his friends.
 Plup. —John had been being praised by all his friends.
 Fut. —John shall *or* will be being praised by all his friends.
 Fut. Perf.—John shall *or* will have been being praised by all his friends.
- Pot. Pres. —John may, can be being praised by all his friends.
 Imp. —John might, could, would, should be being praised by all his friends.
 Perf. —John may, can, must have been being praised by all his friends.
 Plup. —John might, could, would, should have been being praised by all his friends.

Practice.—Change verbs of all sentences of Ex. IV through all tenses of Indicative and Potential Passive (Compound Form) as in model.

EXERCISE VI

Model:

- Ind. Pres. —Is John praised by all his friends?
 Imp. —Was John praised by all his friends?
 Perf. —Has John been praised by all his friends?
 Plup. —Had John been praised by all his friends?
 Fut. —Shall *or* will John be praised by all his friends?

Fut. Perf.—Shall *or* will John have been praised by all his friends?

Pot. Pres. —May *or* can John be praised by all his friends?

Imp. —Might, could, would, should John be praised by all his friends?

Perf. —May, can, must John have been praised by all his friends?

Plup. —Might, could, would, should John have been praised by all his friends?

Practice.—Change verbs of all sentences of Ex. IV through all tenses of Indicative and Potential Passive (Interrogative Form) as in model.

EXERCISE VII

Model:

ACTIVE

	ORD. FORM	COMP'D FORM	INTERROG. FORM
Ind. Pres.	You admire the watch.	You are admiring the watch.	Do you admire the watch?
Imp.	You admired the watch.	You were admiring the watch.	Did you admire the watch?
Perf.	You have admired the watch.	You have been admiring the watch.	Have you admired the watch?
Plup.	You had admired the watch.	You had been admiring the watch.	Had you admired the watch?
Fut.	You shall <i>or</i> will admire the watch.	You shall <i>or</i> will be admiring the watch.	Shall <i>or</i> will you be admiring the watch?
F.Perf.	You shall <i>or</i> will have admired the watch.	You shall <i>or</i> will have been admiring the watch.	Shall <i>or</i> will you have admired the watch?
Pot. Pres.	You may, can admire the watch.	You may, can be admiring the watch.	May, can you admire the watch?
Imp.	You might, could, would, should admire the watch.	You might, could, would, should be admiring the watch.	Might, could, would, should you admire the watch?
Perf.	You may, can, must have admired the watch	You may, can, must have been admiring the watch.	May, can, must you have admired the watch?
Plup.	You might, could, would, should have admired the watch.	You might, could, would, should have been admiring the watch.	Might, could, would, should you have admired the watch?

Practice.—Change verbs of the following sentences through the tense forms of the Active Voice as in model.

1. I play on several instruments.
2. Dogs follow their masters even to death.
3. Germany possesses a powerful navy.
4. We love the brave.
5. Virtue deserves a reward.
6. Thou pursuest a vain delight.
7. You prefer wealth to honor.
8. Sailors love the dark blue sea.
9. The United States surpass all nations in commerce.
10. A statesman foresees the crises of his country.

EXERCISE VIII

Model:

PASSIVE

	ORD. FORM	COMP'D FORM	INTERROG. FORM
Ind. Pres.	Gold is found in Alaska. etc.	Gold is being found in Alaska. etc.	Is gold found in Alaska? etc.

Practice.—Change the verbs of the following sentences through the tense forms of the Indicative and Potential Passive. (Use order and method followed with active verbs of Ex. VII.)

1. Heroes are found in every land.
2. We are preserved in life by the hand of God.
3. The stars are called the eyes of heaven.
4. Every citizen of this country is allowed to vote.
5. Thou art acknowledged the bravest warrior in the land.
6. Our battleships are named after the States.
7. You are deceived in your opinion of Napoleon.
8. The moon is lighted by the sun.
9. Our flag is respected the world over.
10. You are honored for your bravery.

EXERCISE IX

Model: Act.—The Americans routed the Spaniards in every action of the war.

Pass.—The Spaniards were routed by the Americans in every action of the war.

Remarks.—Note that in changing this active sentence to the passive the following rules are observed:—

(1) The subject of the active sentence becomes in the passive an objective case governed by the preposition *by*.

(2) The object of the active sentence becomes, in the passive sentence, the subject.

Practice.—Change the following sentences from the active to the passive as in model.

1. The guileless often outwit the crafty.
2. Cæsar led the Roman legions into Britain.
3. America will rule the sea for centuries.
4. We possess the largest coal mines in the world.
5. South America has witnessed countless revolutions during the last half-century.
6. England deserves the praise of overcoming Napoleon.
7. Napoleon had cowed all the nations of Europe.
8. Before the dawn of another century, republics shall have replaced kingdoms throughout the world.
9. Our isthmian canal may involve the United States in many wars.
10. The most skillful engineer could not bridge the ocean.
11. The laws of the United States forbid the immigration of undesirable foreigners.
12. Some one may have sent a message to Mars.
13. Experienced men could have fought the battles of the Civil War with less loss of life.
14. Too much rain often ruins the crops.
15. The United States purchased the territory of Louisiana for fifteen million dollars.
16. No one has held the office of President for more than two terms.
17. The United States may some day embrace the whole of North America.

18. The Oregon might have met Cervera's fleet.
19. Our mountains conceal fabulous treasures of silver and gold.
20. Water covers three-fourths of the globe.
21. The heat of summer ripens the waving fields.
22. All peoples possess some knowledge of Christ.
23. No one has ever discovered inhabitants on the moon.
24. Before the arrival of the Pilgrim Fathers, the Spaniards had founded St. Augustine.
25. The English colonized the North and Middle Atlantic coast.

EXERCISE X

Model: PASS.—Criminals are punished by the law.

ACT.—The law punishes criminals.

Remarks.—In changing this passive sentence to the active form, the following rules are observed:—

(1) The subject of the passive sentence becomes the object in the active sentence.

(2) The agent of the passive action—the person or thing by whom the passive action is done—becomes the subject of the active sentence.

Practice.—Change the following sentences from the Passive to the Active form.

1. Many foreign ships are built by our shipwrights.
2. Canals were constructed in very ancient times by the Egyptians.
3. Our American volunteers have been preferred by many military experts to regulars.
4. In the future, American exports will be carried by American ships.
5. Before the end of the century, aerial navigation shall have been adopted by all nations.
6. American iron and steel are used by all the nations of the world.
7. By the expenditure of a few millions of dollars our navy can be made the greatest in the world.
8. Our western prairies should be irrigated by the government.
9. By the middle of this century, steam power may be replaced by electric.

10. The North Pole may have been discovered by some of the last explorers.

11. In the event of a general European war, England will be troubled by her colonies.

12. The seal fisheries were protected by the most stringent regulations.

13. The rich are sought by flatterers.

14. Our western rivers have not been cared for sufficiently by the government.

15. The stars were placed by God like lamps in the sky.

16. Thousands of men, women and children are often butchered by the Turks.

17. China may be divided by the greedy European powers.

18. The Russians should be kept out of China by the Great Wall.

19. The manufacture of cigarettes should have been prohibited by the law years ago.

20. Before the first blush of dawn, the moon will have been frightened from the sky by the morning star.

21. Many cases of blindness have been cured by skillful physicians.

22. Many mountain peaks are covered by perpetual snow.

23. Africa will never be ruled wholly by white men.

24. The friendship of America is sought by most of our neighbors.

25. Cuban liberty was readily acknowledged by the United States.

EXERCISE XI

Model: ACT.—Our western wheat-fields are feeding more than our own country.

PASS.—More than our own country is being fed by our western wheat-fields.

Remarks.—It is often hard for students to distinguish between the compound active form of tenses (consisting of some tense of the verb "to be" and the participle in "-ing") and the ordinary passive of the verb. The difficulty arises from the fact that the auxiliary verb "to be" is used in the conjugation of this compound form of the active tenses and also in the conjugation of the passive voice of any verb. The student must remember that in order for any tense of a verb to

be passive it must be a compound of the verb "to be" and the **past** participle of the verb. A compound active tense of any verb is made up of some tense of the auxiliary verb "to be" and the **present** participle of the verb.

In changing the above sentence from active to passive, it will be observed that the same rules are followed as in Ex. IX.

Practice.—Change the following sentences from active to passive, retaining in passive the compound form of the verb-tense.

1. The world is watching the experiments in wireless telegraphy.
2. For years to come, malcontent Filipinos will be exciting short-lived rebellions against our rule.
3. Napoleon was planning his escape from Elba.
4. For months before the Declaration of Independence, the colonies had been considering a revolution.
5. For over a century, the French have been suffering the effects of the Reign of Terror.
6. We are all studying the foreign policy of the United States.
7. For ages the energy of man had been conquering nature.
8. American athletes are constantly defeating their European competitors.
9. We may be twenty-five years constructing the Panama canal.
10. The sea has been battering our coasts from time immemorial.
11. The manufacturers may have been putting good material into the worthless guns.
12. Our engineers will be perfecting our coast-defenses for years.

EXERCISE XII

Remark.—The student will observe that in Exercises IX and XI all the active verbs have objects in the objective case,—which become the subjects when the sentences are changed to the passive form. If the verb of any sentence has no object, the sentence cannot be changed to the passive form. As no intransitive or neuter verb has an object, no sentence

whose verb is intransitive or neuter can be changed to the passive form.

Practice.—Change the following sentences to passive form. If in any case the change cannot be made, give the reason why.

1. The Romans admitted conquered nations to citizenship.
2. The wild mountain torrent rushes down to the sea.
3. The Old Guard failed at Waterloo.
4. A thousand Grecian arrows flew towards the walls of Troy.
5. Jason carried home the Golden Fleece.
6. A thousand mountain peaks glitter in the sunshine.
7. Three hundred Spartans held the Persian host at bay.
8. Horatius leaped into the foaming river at his back.
9. The volcano's fires blazed red through all the night.
10. The soldiers and marines fought shoulder to shoulder.
11. The alarm bell rang day and night.
12. The allied forces marched many miles.

EXERCISE XIII

Model: Act.—If England and the United States make an alliance, all Europe will form a compact against them.

PASS.—If an alliance is made by England and the United States, a compact against them will be formed by all Europe.

Remark.—In this complex sentence, both clauses are changed from the active to the passive construction. In doing this the rules laid down in Ex. IX for the change of a simple active sentence to the passive must be put into practice in each clause of the complex sentence.

Practice.—Change the following complex sentences from the active to the passive form.

1. Blücher eluded the French marshal who was watching him.
2. While Sherman was leading his army through Georgia, Grant was pressing Richmond.

3. No army will ever take Gibraltar, as long as England garrisons the rock well.

4. The men who overcame the Mexicans in eighteen hundred and forty-eight defended the Union in eighteen hundred and sixty-one.

5. Until inventors perfect airships, the public will not trust them.

6. After the Americans destroyed Cervera's fleet at Santiago, the Spaniards readily surrendered the city.

7. The Boers frequently defeated the superior forces which the English sent against them.

8. When the waters from the snow, melted in the mountains, swell its current, the Mississippi often breaks its levees.

9. As we ridicule the customs of the past, the future will ridicule us.

10. The colonists, whom the soldiers of George III despised at the beginning of the revolution, before the end of the struggle humbled the Red Coats to the dust.

EXERCISE XIV

Model: PASS.—As soon as China is divided by the European powers, Japan, too, will be coveted by them.

ACT.—As soon as the European powers divide China, they will covet Japan too.

Remark.—In changing a complex sentence, both of whose members are passive, to active form, apply in each member the rules given in Ex. X.

Practice.—Change to active form:—

1. The Americans, who were taken prisoners by the Spaniards, were treated courteously by their captors.

2. As long as the army was led by skilled generals, it was not overpowered by the enemy.

3. Until England was united into one kingdom by Alfred, the island was harassed by domestic foes and foreign invaders.

4. The cotton rampart by which New Orleans was defended was set on fire by the British guns.

5. When Blenheim was almost won by the French, the English were led to victory by Marlborough.

6. The beauty of Niagara Falls will soon be spoilt by the power-plants which are being built by greedy capitalists.

7. If locks were built by the government, many of our now useless rivers could be utilized by commerce.

8. The daring of automobilists who have been killed by their own carelessness will not be imitated by the wise.

9. The men who were pinched by hunger and cold at Valley Forge will be sung by poets for evermore.

10. The rivers, which are swollen to unruly floods by the spring rains, are sometimes completely dried up by the summer heat.

EXERCISE XV

Model.—(1) The horse led in the race.

(2) The black horse easily led in the great race.

Remarks.—Both of these sentences are simple. The first is expanded in the second by the introduction of adjectives to signify a qualification of “horse” and of “race” and of an adverb to qualify the verb.

Practice.—Expand the following sentences by the introduction of adjectives to qualify the nouns and of adverbs to qualify the verbs.

1. The general was defeated in the battle.
2. The island was submerged by the river.
3. Americans are astonishing the world by inventions.
4. Railroads have built up the country.
5. Nations are maintaining armies.
6. Clouds cover the sky.
7. Stars shine through the night.
8. Soldiers pursue the enemy.
9. Gardens have flowers.
10. The governments are building navies
11. The liners are beating the records.
12. Volcanoes are feared by men.

EXERCISE XVI

Model.—(1) The lieutenant shot the leader.

(2) The lieutenant in the red cloak shot the leader of the rebels.

Remark.—In the second sentence, the phrase, “in the red cloak”, qualifies “lieutenant”, a noun; therefore it is an adjective in force. As it is introduced by the preposition “in”, it is called a prepositional adjective phrase. “Of the rebels” is also a prepositional adjective phrase. •

Practice.—Qualify the nouns of the following sentences by prepositional adjective phrases.

1. The companies were defeated by the squadrons.
2. The waves wear away the rocks.
3. The Old Guard led the army.
4. The Light Brigade charged the hosts.
5. The English beheld a rampart.
6. The minerals astonish the searchers.
7. The van was sighted by the sentries.
8. Thousands are wasting lives.
9. The cavalry is the finest arm.
10. Dewey passed the forts.

EXERCISE XVII

Model.—(1) Sheridan charged the enemy.

(2) Calling on his men, Sheridan charged the enemy coming down the road..

Remark.—In this example the first sentence is expanded by means of the phrases “Calling on his men” and “coming down the road”. Both these phrases express a quality,—the first of Sheridan, the second of the enemy; therefore they are adjective phrases. As they are introduced by participles they are called participial adjective phrases.

Practice.—Qualify either the subject or object of the following sentences by a participial adjective phrase.

1. The morning star precedes the day
2. The moon silvers the waves.
3. The smoke burdens the air.
4. The steamer cleaves the wave.
5. Napoleon led his army home.
6. Railroads display our industry.
7. Fleets help commerce.
8. Cuba can supply us with sugar.
9. The cotton-gin enriched the South.
10. The printing press enlightened a world.

EXERCISE XVIII

Model.—(1) The island gleams across the pass.

(2) The island, a wilderness of palmetto, gleams across the pass.

Remark.—In this example the first sentence is expanded by the addition of the phrase “a wilderness of palmetto”. This phrase is an adjective phrase because it qualifies “island”. It is an appositional adjective phrase because it is introduced by a noun.

Practice.—Expand the following sentences by the addition of one or more appositional adjective phrases.

1. The oaks lord it over the smaller trees.
2. The tides bring up their battering rams.
3. The clouds gleam white above the western horizon.
4. The steamships often cross the ocean in less than six days.
5. The batteries down the bay guard New York harbor.
6. Steam was not utilized to any great extent till the early part of the nineteenth century.
7. The lilac is in bloom.
8. Twenty thousand soldiers were sent in the first transports.
9. Cuba was long the scene of civil war.
10. The Civil War left a nation instead of an assembly of states.

EXERCISE XIX

Model.—(1) The general faced the enemy.

(2) The General, brave even in his old age, faced the enemy.

Remark.—A collection of words such as “brave even in his old age” qualifying a noun and introduced by an adjective is called a simple adjective phrase.

Practice.—Qualify some noun or nouns of the following sentences by an adjective phrase or phrases.

1. Raleigh spread his cloak under the feet of the queen.
2. The Puritans landed at Plymouth Rock.
3. The Monitor came out towards the Merrimac.
4. The sun rose from behind a bank of clouds.
5. The air choked the firemen.
6. The engine dragged the train.
7. The grumbling of the volcano could be heard by the rescuers.
8. The waves combed out on the shore.
9. Soldiers never desert their colors.
10. Napoleon led the French to Moscow.

EXERCISE XX.

Model.—(1) The French charged the English.

(2) After many repulses, the French at Waterloo charged the English with redoubled vigor.

Remark.—In (2) “after many repulses” marks the time of “charged”; “at Waterloo” marks the place of “charged”; “with redoubled vigor” marks the manner of “charged”; therefore they all express a quality of the verb, are adverbial in force. All groups of words, containing no finite verb, and marking the time, the place, the manner, the means, the instrument, of a verb are adverbial phrases, no matter how introduced.

Practice.—Qualify the verbs in the following simple sentences by at least one adverbial phrase.

1. The whale attacked the boat.
2. The general heard the guns.
3. Napoleon tried to escape to America.
4. Jefferson bought the territory of Louisiana.
5. Washington crossed the Delaware.
6. The great brand made lightnings.
7. Sir Bedivere's harness clashed.
8. The sunlight checkers the ground.
9. The moisture of distilling rains and melting snows is held.
10. Nature has adorned the vine.

EXERCISE XXI

Model.—(1) Hiawatha waited.

He was at the doorway of his wigwam.

(2). At the doorway of his wigwam, Hiawatha waited.

Remark.—The two sentences in (1) have been combined into one simple sentence by expressing the sense of the second in an adverbial phrase. Two sentences may likewise be combined into one simple sentence by changing one sentence into an adjective or adjective phrase.

Practice.—*Combine the following pairs of sentences into single simple sentences by expressing the sense of the sentences marked (adj.) by adjectives or adjective phrases, and the sense of those marked (adv.) by adverbs or adverbial phrases.

* In this and all the following exercises in sentence-structure, the teacher will find it profitable, if his class be capable of it, to have his pupils, after working out the exercise as here proposed, invent original phrases and clauses for the expansion of *each* of the sentences set down in every exercise. It will also be profitable to have them express their sentences in several forms, declarative, interrogative, imperative, etc. As a test of their knowledge it may be well, on the completion of each exercise, to demand from the pupils some original sentences of the kind built in the exercise. For these original sentences the teacher may assign the subject or topic, but should give no other help.

1. There are three vines.
They are in an ancient forest. (adv.)
2. The Rabbi leaped into the city of the dead.
He had the Death-Angel's sword. (adv.)
3. The queen loosed the casque.
The casque was shattered. (adj.)
4. The bells ring loud.
They ring from the old monastic tower. (adv.)
5. Napoleon fled from Elba.
He was confident of his power over the French. (adj.)
6. The fame of John overflowed Asia.
He was called the golden-mouthed. (adj.)
7. There is a valley of sweet roses.
It is by Bendemeer's stream. (adv.)
8. The snows are sparkling to the moon.
They lie deep on the convent roof. (adj.)
9. The storm redoubled its force.
This was after a partial lull. (adv.)
10. The traveler sees clusters of nut-brown cottages.
They nestle among the sloping orchards. (adj.)

EXERCISE XXII

Model.—(1) It was midnight.

The tent was guarded.

The Turk was dreaming of victory.

(2) At midnight, in his guarded tent, the Turk was dreaming of victory.

Remark.—Three simple sentences are here combined into one simple sentence, by expressing the sense of two of these sentences by phrases.

Practice.—Combine the following groups of sentences into single simple sentences. The abbreviations (adj.) and (adv.) mean the same as in the previous exercise.

1. It was ten days later. (adv.)
A lugger entered the bayou.
It was full of armed men. (adj.)

2. Jason went after the Golden Fleece.
His ship was the Argo. (adv.)
The golden fleece was in Colchis. (adv.)
3. The night dews are falling on still waters.
The waters flow between walls of shadowy granite. (adj.)
They flow in a gleaming pass. (adj.)
4. Perry captured a British fleet.
It was in the Battle of Lake Erie. (adv.)
He was without previous experience in battle. (adj.)
5. A distant sail excited our curiosity.
It was gliding along the edge of the ocean. (adj.)
It was almost sundown. (adv.)
6. The moon rises in the east behind the fleecy clouds.
She quenches the stars with her kindling light. (adj.)
The clouds are silvered by her rays. (adj.)
7. The white glaciers blaze.
They are like mighty serpents with scales of fire. (adj.)
It is daybreak. (adv.)
8. A terrible battle was fought at Gettysburg. (adv.).
Over fifty thousand men were lost.
The battle was fought by Northern and Southern forces. (adj.)
9. The brook is ice-bound. (adj.)
Its only sound is a soft gurgle.
The gurgle is hard to hear. (adj.)
10. The block of buildings is very valuable. (adj.)
It is in the middle of the city. (adj.)
Fire has destroyed it.

EXERCISE XXIII

Model.—(1) The river glides along noiselessly.

It is changeable as the sky above it.

It has high cliffs on one side.

It has rich meadows on the other side.

(2) Changeable as the sky above it, the river glides along noiselessly, with high cliffs on one side and rich meadows on the other.

Remark.—Here four simple sentences are combined into one by changing three of them into phrases.

Practice.—Change each group of the following sentences into a single simple sentence, by changing three of the sentences into phrases. The abbreviations (adj.) and (adv.) mean the same as in the previous exercises.

1. Captain Kidd was sent to put down the pirates. (adj.)
 He was sent by the Governor of New York. (adj.)
 He himself became a pirate.
 He was the most famous pirate of any time. (adj.)
2. The Acadians were happy. (adj.)
 They were driven from their homes and country.
 They were expelled by the British. (adj.)
 They were expelled without warning. (adv.)
3. It was evening. (adv.)
 The air was clear and tranquil. (adv.)
 The thin column of pale, blue smoke curled upward.
 It curled from the cabins of the negro quarters. (adv.)
4. A cumbrous boat floated down the beautiful river.
 It was rowed by Acadian boatmen. (adj.)
 It floated into the golden stream. (adv.)
 The stream was the broad and swift Mississippi. (adj.)
5. Master Simon covered himself with glory.
 He showed great stateliness. (adv.)
 He walked a minuet. (adj.)
 His partner was Dame Mince Pie. (adj.)
6. Thousands of silken lanterns were hung.
 These had been painted by the most delicate pencils of Canton. (adj.)
 They hung from bamboo arches, minarets and towers. (adv.)
 These had been erected about the gardens. (adj.)
7. The long avalanches are rolled down the mountain side.
 They are rolled down in streams brighter than the lightning. (adv.)
 They send a tribute of driven snow to heaven. (adj.)
 These tributes are like altar-smoke. (adj.)
8. Virgil became acquainted with Augustus and other noted Romans. (adj.)

He lived at Rome.

He wrote Latin poems. (adj.)

These poems are read even at the present day. (adj.)

9. Above the puny scrub timber rises the fort.

It is an angular ruddy mass of old brick. (adv.)

Its ditches swarm with crabs. (adv.)

Its sluiceways are half choked by obsolete cannon shot. (adv.)

10. He awoke in his own room. (adv.)

He heard his mother's voice.

She was calling him. (adj.)

The room was now flooded with the gold of the morning sun. (adj.)

EXERCISE XXIV

Model.—(1) The coast is rock-girt.

There are bowlders along it.

They are hurled along by the waves.

They act like battering rams.

They destroy the coast.

(2) The bowlders along the rock-girt coast, hurled along by the waves, destroy it like battering rams.

Remark.—Here five separate simple sentences are combined into one by converting four of them into adjective or adverbial phrases.

Practice.—Combine the following groups of sentences into single simple sentences as in model. The abbreviations (adj.) and (adv.) mean the same as in the previous exercises.

1. The bellowing tide rushed from the Gulf.

It was unresisted. (adj.)

It tore and swallowed the land in its course. (adj.)

It plowed out deep-sea channels. (adj.)

It rent islands in twain. (adj.)

2. The ancient Roman road ran through a sea of shadows.

It was snow-covered. (adj.)

It was like a thick, smooth wake of foam. (adj.)

The wake was left by some great ship. (adj.)

The ship plowed the green ocean long ago. (adj.)

3. The professor entered the room.
He entered wheezing and puffing. (adj.)
He elbowed his way through the throng. (adj.)
He had a look of sturdy self-confidence on his face. (adj.)
He had a thick Greek quarto in his hands. (adj.)
4. It was a brilliant moonlight night. (adv.)
It was extremely cold. (adj.)
Our chaise was whirled along.
The ground was frozen. (adv.)
The horses were galloping. (adv.)
5. Ponce de Leon came within sight of a coast.
He called it the land of Easter. (adj.)
This was on Easter Sunday. (adv.)
It was in the year 1513. (adj.)
He was searching for the fountain of perpetual youth. (adj.)
6. Maisonneuve was left alone. (adj.)
He retreated down the beaten track. (adj.)
He held the Indians at bay.
They were pursuing him. (adj.)
He had a pistol in each hand. (adv.)
7. It was moonlight. (adv.)
Boats shot past us.
This was occasional. (adv.)
They had high sails. (adj.)
These sails caught every breeze from over the hills. (adj.)
8. The brook runs through the listening woods. (adj.)
It plays low, tremulous music.
It plays through all the sweet summer. (adv.)
Its harp-strings are dark water. (adv.)
Its strings are fingered by the silvery pebbles. (adj.)
9. The boat was lost in a maze of waters. (adj.)
The waters were sluggish and devious. (adj.)
They were like a network of steel. (adj.)
The network extended in every direction. (adj.)
The network extended under the towering and tenebrous boughs of the cypress.
10. The road led from Antioch. (adj.)
The road wound for five miles along the foot of the mountains. (adv.)
It wound among plantations of myrtles and mulberries.

It had a wide outlook over the valley of the Orontes. (adj.)

It had a wide outlook over the distant, shimmering sea. (adj.)

EXERCISE XXV

Model.—(1) The French were defeated at Waterloo.

Napoleon tried to escape to America.

(2) After the French were defeated at Waterloo, Napoleon tried to escape to America.

Remark.—Here two sentences are combined into one. This one sentence is a complex sentence, because it has two finite verbs and two clauses; one of which is dependent, the other principal or independent. The clause “after the French were defeated at Waterloo” marks the time of the action indicated in the principal clause; therefore fulfills for the principal clause the purpose of an adverb and is to be considered therefore as dependent.

Practice.—Change the following groups of sentences into complex sentences, joining the dependent to the principal clause by means of the temporal conjunctions “when”, “while”, “as long as”, “as soon as”, “since”, “until”, “before”, “after”. Write the dependent clause first and separate it from the principal clause by means of a comma. Where possible, try several combinations by means of the various conjunctions.

1. Yorktown was surrendered.

Lord North acknowledged the loss of the British cause.

2. Vicksburg was taken by Grant.

The power of the Confederacy in the West was broken.

3. The Barons made their stand at Runnymede.

The liberty of Englishmen was assured.

4. Cervera was bottled up at Santiago.

Spain lost hopes of even a qualified submission.

5. The moon has a golden ring.

The old sailors prophesy hurricanes.

6. Montcalm awoke on the 13th of September, 1759.

He beheld an English force of five thousand strong on the heights of Abraham.

7. Cortez landed in Mexico.

He destroyed his ships.

8. The sun rises in the morning.

The morning star shines like a jewel on its brow.

9. The Alien and Sedition laws were passed during the Presidency of John Adams.

Jefferson was elected Supreme Magistrate.

10. The Merrimac created havoc among the Northern vessels.

The Monitor appeared upon the scene.

EXERCISE XXVI

Model.—(1) The American Colonies threw off the yoke of Great Britain.

The mother-country was trying to oppress them.

(2) The American Colonies threw off the yoke of Great Britain because the mother-country was trying to oppress them.

Remark.—Here two independent sentences are united into one complex sentence, the connection between the two being made and expressed by the causal conjunction “because”.

Practice.—Unite the following pairs of independent sentences into single complex sentences by means of the causal conjunctions “because”, “for”, “since”, “as”, “whereas”, “in as much as”. If the dependent clause precedes the principal, separate them by a comma. If the dependent clause follows the principal, it is generally not separated by a mark of punctuation. Of all these causal conjunctions, “whereas” and “in as much as” are the only two whose clause frequently precedes the principal. Dependent clauses introduced by the other causal conjunctions generally follow the principal clauses.

1. The inhabitants of Martinique had no fear.

They thought the volcano extinct.

2. The whole country is interested in the irrigation of the rainless districts of the West.

Those districts with water will become exceedingly rich.

3. The Acadians made no outbreak against the English soldiery.

Father Felician had exhorted them to patience.

4. America will not be worsted at sea.

Our sailors are the best gunners in the world.

5. The Revolution deluged France with innocent blood.

The vilest wretches in the land were its leaders.

6. Our American rivers have never been utilized to the full.

The government has not improved them properly.

7. South American republics will be in continual disturbance for many years.

The people are exceedingly fickle and excitable.

8. Charlemagne was crowned Emperor of the Holy Roman Empire.

He had freed Rome from the insults of the Lombards.

9. Many American soldiers died from disease in Cuba and the Philippines.

They did not observe necessary precautions in their food.

10. The humiliation of the nations is at hand.

In their pride they have cast off the yoke of God.

EXERCISE XXVII

Model.—(1) Napoleon had not marched to Moscow.

He would not have lost his crown.

(2) If Napoleon had not marched to Moscow, he would not have lost his crown.

Remark.—Two independent sentences are here changed into one complex sentence, the dependent clause being introduced by “if”.

Practice.—Combine the following pairs of simple sentences into single complex sentences, making one of the sentences a dependent clause introduced by “if”, “unless”, “though”. Separate dependent and principal clauses by a comma.

1. Unanimity prevails in a body of men.

Success is sure.

2. You are youthful and ambitious.
You cannot fail in your endeavors.
3. Europe united against him.
Napoleon was more than equal to his necessities.
4. We give ourselves night and day to our work.
We make no perceptible progress.
5. Only three hundred Greeks stood in the pass of Thermopylæ.
The Persian host could not force a passage.
6. A man gains the whole world.
What doth it profit him?
7. Diamonds glitter like stars.
They are only a little charcoal.
8. Oil is spread over the waters.
The storm is calmed.
9. The smoke from the chimneys is blown earthward.
We will have an abundant rain.
10. The sky is leaden and dreary.
It will not snow till morning.

EXERCISE XXVIII

Model.—(1) The United States has built forts along the seaboard.

The coast cities are safe from naval descents.

(2) The United States has built forts along the seaboard in order that the coast cities may be safe from naval descents.

Remark.—Two simple sentences are here united into one complex sentence by means of the conjunction of purpose “in order that”. It will be noticed that the mood of the clause “the coast cities . . .” is changed from Indicative to Potential when it is made the dependent clause—expressive of purpose—in the complex sentence. This change from Indicative to Potential is frequently required when a simple sentence is converted into a dependent clause expressive of purpose.

Practice.—Change the following pairs of sentences into

complex sentences, making one of them a dependent clause introduced by "that", "in order that", "lest".

1. The Venezuelan difficulty was referred to the Court of the Hague.
War was avoided.
2. The mountains were tunneled by skillful engineers.
The people on either side were connected more closely.
3. Thousands rushed off to the Yukon.
They tried their fortunes in the gold fields.
4. Since the acquisition of the Philippines, the cities on the Pacific coast are always in a flutter.
The bubonic plague is brought into them by travelers from those islands.
5. Thousands of willows are cut every year from the lowlands of the Mississippi and Missouri.
They are woven into mats for the protection of the levees in the South.
6. The bunker capacity of war ships is made as large as possible.
They do not need re-coaling while at sea.
7. In examining incoming steamers customs officers exercise the greatest care.
Precious jewels and costly silks and laces are brought in by smugglers.
8. The government spends thousands of dollars yearly on the Fish Commission.
Our rivers and lakes are kept stocked.
9. During electrical storms, people avoid the neighborhood of large trees.
They are in danger of being struck by lightning.
10. Forts are scattered all along our frontier.
We are protected from foreign invasion.

EXERCISE XXIX

Model.—(1) Cæsar was a great general.

Cicero was a great orator.

(2) Cæsar was a greater general than Cicero was an orator..

Remark.—Here two simple sentences become one complex sentence by expressing comparison between Cæsar and

Cicero. When two persons or things are compared with regard to one quality, generally the quality is expressed before "than" or "as" and not expressed after "than" or "as", e.g. "Caesar was a greater general than Pompey (was a general)". The quality compared is generalship.

Practice.—Combine the following pairs of simple sentences into complex sentences by instituting comparisons.

1. Alexander conquered many nations.
Most men have read about many nations.
2. Winter is a disagreeable season.
Summer is a pleasant season.
3. Grant proved himself a skillful general.
Sherman proved himself a skillful general.
4. Napoleon spilt the blood of many soldiers.
Cæsar spilt the blood of many soldiers.
5. Niagara Falls carry down a great deal of water in one hour.
Other falls carry down a great deal of water in a year.
6. The Thirty Years War reduced the population of Germany.
Others wars since have not reduced the population so much.
7. During a few months of plague great numbers of people die.
Not as many die in years at other times.
8. War does great injury to any country.
Famine does great injury to any country.
9. European countries spend great sums on standing armies.
Less would suffice to banish poverty from the land.
10. Wide boundaries are a great benefit to a country.
Wide boundaries are a great danger to a country.

EXERCISE XXX

Model.—(1) Even the most patient people will sooner or later revolt against tyranny.

The history of all times proves this.

(2) The history of all times proves that even the most patient people will sooner or later revolt against tyranny.

(1) Napoleon was the greatest military genius of modern times.

This is acknowledged by friend and foe alike.

(2) That Napoleon was the greatest military genius of modern times is acknowledged by friend and foe alike.

Remark.—In the first example “what history proves” is expressed in a “that” clause. This “that” clause is therefore really an object after the verb “proves” and is called an object clause. In the second example “what is acknowledged” is expressed by a “that” clause which serves the purpose of subject and is called a subject clause. The “that” clause is regarded as a dependent clause and the combination of two sentences into one as done here gives a complex sentence. The use of “that” clauses is most frequent as subjects or objects of verbs expressing perception or expression.

Practice.—Combine the following pairs of sentences into single complex sentences by changing one of them into a “that” clause.

1. The Messiah should be born not in Jerusalem but in Bethlehem of Judah.

The prophets had said this.

2. The literature of Greece deserves the study of all educated men.

This is best proven by the imitation of the ages.

3. Something disastrous had come upon us.

No one dared to say it.

4. The bell was tolling the knell of some new tenant of the tomb.

I was a long time in recollecting this.

5. The power of the United States is feared by foreign nations.

This is shown by the respect paid our demands and requests on every occasion.

6. Dewey had completely destroyed the Spanish fleet at Manila.

This was not known in the United States for nearly a week after the event.

7. Napoleon's soldiers would follow him through all sorts of trials and into any danger.

He was perfectly aware of this.

8. Old Pelee had sunk into a perpetual sleep.

It was believed by all the inhabitants of Martinique.

9. The voyagers' own figures were perfectly represented in different-colored threads.

The voyagers saw this on examining the splendid tapestry.

10. The assembled Congress had declared the independence of the United States.

It was announced to the waiting and impatient people by the glad ringing of the bells.

EXERCISE XXXI

Model.—(1) I have nothing to give thee in return,—only this.

I can tell thee the birthplace of the Messiah.

(2) I have nothing to give thee in return,—only this, that I can tell thee the birthplace of the Messiah.

Remark.—In this combination of two simple sentences into one complex sentence, one of the original sentences is converted into a “that” clause dependent on the clause “I have nothing . . .” and explanatory of the word “this”. Clauses introduced by the conjunction “that” are frequently used in English to explain a preceding noun or pronoun.

Practice.—Combine the following groups of sentences into single sentences by converting one of them into a “that” clause.

1. Napoleon III was anxious for a war.

According to some his only preparation for war consisted in this

2. Charles Lee was a traitor to the American cause.

The fact was not discovered for nearly a hundred years.

3. The earth was entirely flat.

Almost the whole world was once of this opinion.

4. Burgoyne was defeated.

The report was spread by the Americans among the other British armies.

5. Lincoln was assassinated.

The news caused consternation to North and South alike.

6. The planets are inhabited.

The belief has never gained much ground.

7. The English have given many of their colonies an almost democratic government.

Their rule is liked by these colonies for this.

8. The American Government would rob their children of their faith.

The fear caused considerable opposition to us among the Filipinos.

9. Sherman had cut himself off from a base of supplies.

The knowledge of it gave rise to a great deal of sharp criticism.

10. Public opinion is behind him.

This confidence has nerved many a ruler to act against the advice of his counselors.

EXERCISE XXXII

Model.—(1) The rain is falling plentifully to-day.

It will be drawn back into the clouds to-morrow.

(2) The rain which is falling plentifully to-day will be drawn back into the clouds to-morrow.

Remark.—Here two simple sentences are united into one complex sentence by converting one of them into a relative clause.

Practice.—Combine the following pairs of simple sentences into complex sentences, by converting one of them into a relative clause. Observe that, when the relative takes the place of a noun or pronoun in the objective case, the relative must be put in the objective.

1. Messala was defeated by Ben Hur.

He hated Ben Hur.

2. Down the mossy sides of the hills run little streams.

These keep the valley green.

3. Some mountain valleys are sunk lower than the surrounding country.

Of these the valley of the Lake of Lucerne in Switzerland is an example.

4. A beautiful hoar frost was spread over the meadows during the night.

It lay glittering like a field of diamonds in the morning sun.

5. The Corsican upstart became the master of Europe.

The rulers of the other nations had continually insulted him.

6. Bismarck humbled himself before the Empress.
He had alienated her son from her.
7. The Armenians are still massacred by the ruthless Turks.
Their misfortunes have excited the indignation of Europe on many occasions.
8. The wave rolled along with a low, rich sound of whispered thunder.
It combed itself out in sheets of woolly foam.
9. Alexander cherished an insatiable ambition.
On account of it the world was too small for his desires.
10. Charlemagne was called a man of iron.
His whole armor was of plain, black iron.

EXERCISE XXXIII

Practice.—Combine the following groups of sentences into complex sentences by any of the methods explained.

1. Merlin was a magician.
His vast wit and hundred winters were like loyal vassals toiling for their liege.
2. Horatius leaped boldly and fearlessly into the yellow Tiber.
The bridge was hewn down behind him.
3. Siegfried carried off the vast treasure guarded by the dragon.
He slew the dragon.
4. Icarus flew near the sun.
The sun melted the wax from his wings.
5. Hiawatha was far away among the forests of the mountain.
He heard Minnehaha's cry of anguish.
6. You wish to view fair Melrose aright.
Visit it by the pale moonlight.
7. The plashing of the water, like a voice half-sobbing and half-laughing under the shadows, broke the deep silence.
The water was trickling through the chinks in the stones of the dam.
8. The Indians placed the missionary on one of their torture-scaffolds of bark.
With their sticks they had forced the blood from the weakened man.
9. There was Martling, a large blue-bearded Dutchman.
He had nearly taken a British frigate with an old nine-pounder.

10. Canute wished to hear the sweet song of the monks of Ely.
He ordered his oarsmen nearer the monastery.

11. The hollow of heaven flames like the interior of a chalice.
The waves and clouds are flying in one wild rout of broken gold.

12. John Alden went on his errand, out of the street of the village,
into the paths of the forest.

The bluebirds and robins were building towns in the populous trees, peaceful aerial cities of joy and affection and freedom, with hanging gardens of verdure.

13. You are but a lowly shepherd from the hills.
You shall behold the young Child in an inn.

14. By the chiseling of the sea are cut out of the coast-wall the fantastic pillars called Devil's pulpits.

They may be seen along almost any rocky coast.

15. I closed mine eyes.
The gems might blind my purpose.

16. The winter had been one of privations and suffering.
Washington's army spent the winter at Valley Forge.

17. From horizon to shore ran an uninterrupted heaving like one vast green swarming of snaky forms.

It rolled in hissing and flattening on the shore.

18. Unbidden by the Directory, Napoleon returned from Egypt.

He made himself and two others supreme magistrates under the name of consuls.

19. The irregular meadows run in and out like inlets of a lake among these rocky mountain fields; sweet with perpetual streamlets.

In the descent these streamlets have chosen the steepest places for the sake of the leaps.

20. The followers of Philip of Pokanoket were a band of native untaught heroes fighting to the last gasp in the cause of their country.

They made the most generous struggle in the power of man.

21. There was a grove full of small Hindoo temples.

It was planted with the most graceful trees of the East.

22. The strange denizens of the mountain looked at Rip Van Winkle with a fixed statue-like gaze and strange uncouth lackluster countenances.

His knees smote together in fear.

23. The sheen of the Assyrian spears was like stars on the sea.

The blue wave rolls nightly on deep Galilee.

24. Can you see by the dawn's early light the star-spangled banner?
We hailed it so proudly at the twilight's last gleaming.

25. The orchards fruit-deep with apple and peach were fair as a garden of the Lord.

Over the mountain-wall, winding down into Fredericktown, with horse and foot marched Lee.

EXERCISE XXXIV

Model.—(1) The American infantry charged from the heights.
The marines attacked daringly from the shore.

(2) The American infantry charged from the heights and the marines attacked daringly from the shore.

Remark.—Here two simple sentences are united into one compound sentence by means of the coördinate conjunction "and".

Practice.—Connect the following pairs of simple sentences into compound sentences by means of the coördinate conjunctions. Note the difference in sense produced by the use of various conjunctions.

1. The Germans easily made ready for the Franco-Prussian war.
The French rushed into it altogether unprepared.
2. There will be a heavy fall of snow.
The rain will come down in torrents.
3. Napoleon defeated all Europe time and again.
Coalition after coalition was formed against him.
4. Burgoyne's communications with Lake Champlain were cut.
His men were soon suffering from hunger.
5. In tears our last farewell was taken.
Now in tears we meet again.
6. Judah was a captive by the waters of Babylon.
The sons of Jacob were in bondage to our kings.
7. The strong will prevailed, subduing and molding the gentler.
John Alden went on his errand.
8. The Spanish fleet under Cervera kept within the land-locked harbor of Santiago.
The American fleet could not attack it.

9. "Ah! my Lord Arthur, whither shall I go?"

"Where shall I hide my forehead and my eyes?"

10. Grandly the oaks bore themselves.

Every fiber of their knotted thews was strained in the unequal contest with the sea.

EXERCISE XXXV

Model.—(1) I returned to the drawing-room.

I found the company seated round the fire, listening to the parson.

He was ensconced in a high-backed open chair.

(2) When I returned to the drawing-room, I found the company seated round the fire listening to the parson, who was ensconced in a high-backed open chair.

Remark.—Here three simple sentences are combined into one complex sentence, consisting of one principal and two dependent clauses.

Practice.—Combine the following groups of simple sentences into complex sentences having one principal and two dependent clauses. Take care not to unite two dependent clauses merely by one of the copulative conjunctions.

1. An old woman had seen the ghost, through the windows of the church, slowly pacing up and down the aisles.

The moon shone.

Her cottage bordered on the churchyard.

2. Night came on.

There were many of the stoutest unbelievers.

They were shy of venturing alone in the footpath leading across the churchyard.

*** Thus far only pairs of simple sentences have been combined into complex or compound sentences. Hereafter in the exercises, three or more simple sentences will be combined into complex or compound sentences. In practice it will probably be found advisable to change this order, and to take *all* the exercises on complex sentences before the exercises on compound sentences.

3. The brook runs through meadows or lowland.
It keeps changing and moving its banks continually.
It hollows out pools or deep eddies along the shore.
4. We find the mountain brook the most delightful of all nature studies.
We come upon it fresh from months of city life.
It has its source far up among the rocky, woody hill.
5. I heard the story from the lips of a veteran pilot.
We sat one evening together on the trunk of a drifted cypress.
Some high tide had pressed the tree deeply into the Grand Isle beach.
6. You shall see a green halo kindling on the summit of the eastern hills, brighter, brighter.
The large white circle of the slow moon is lifted up among the barred clouds.
She quenches star after star with her kindling light.
7. The trees assume strange curves of strength and grace.
They bend themselves against the mountain side.
They grow heavily and stiffly from the level line of the plain.
8. I swore a vow before them all.
I had not seen the Holy Grail.
I would ride a twelvemonth and a day in quest of it.
9. In the blast of lightning there smote along the hall a beam of light seven times more clear than day.
Down the beam stole the Holy Grail.
It was covered with a luminous cloud.
10. The old stage coach was at the door with horses harnessed.
The sunshine reached the withered sward beneath the oaks.
Their hoary branches murmured: "Farewell for evermore."

EXERCISE XXXVI

Model.—(1) The barons assembled at Runnymede.
They learnt the intentions of King John.
He did not assent to their demands.
He saw them resolved on victory or war.

(2) After the barons had assembled at Runnymede in order that they might learn the intentions of King John, he

did not assent to their demands until he saw them resolved on victory or war.

Remarks.—Here four simple sentences are combined into one complex sentence consisting of one principal and three dependent clauses. In making a combination of this kind it is sometimes necessary to change the mood or tense or both of some of the verbs in the original simple sentences.

Practice.—Combine the following groups of sentences into complex sentences of four clauses, one principal and three dependent.

1. Slowly lifting the horn and expanding fully his broad, deep chest the herdsman blew a blast.

The horn hung by his side.

The blast resounded wildly and sweet and far through the still damp air of the evening.

Out of the grass the long white horns of the cattle rose like flakes of foam on the adverse currents of the ocean.

2. I was thinking of my boyhood days.

I had not thought so of anything for years.

Something began to move over my eyes.

It felt like tears.

3. The king bound them by straight vows to his own self.

They rose, from kneeling, knighted.

Some were dazed.

A man wakes half-blinded at the coming of a light.

4. The Magian gave him a draught of a simple but potent remedy.

He always carried it in his girdle.

The Magians were physicians as well as astrologers.

He poured it slowly between the colorless lips of the dying man.

5. The sun rises behind a ridge crested with pine.

The ridge is at a distance of two miles.

The trees become trees of light, seen in clear flame against the darker sky and dazzling as the sun itself.

These trees extend for a space of three or four degrees on either side of the sun.

6. The sunlight has begun to touch the waterfall.

Here it begins to bend.

There is a bar of silver running across it.

This bar of silver changes only with the sun.

7. A defeat might ruin the French.

It would only exasperate the enemy.

The enemy's resources in men were incomparably greater.

Maisonneuve, the commander of the French, knew this.

8. The child stood in a lighted space, with one tiny hand enveloped by the captain's great brown fist.

She looked lovely.

A general exclamation of surprise went up from the party of searchers.

They had not expected to find so fair and beautiful an object among these rough scavengers of the gulf.

9. Nature has not yet started out of winter.

A late snowstorm comes.

It turns to rain, covering the limbs of the trees with ice and putting a crystal coating on the earth.

Next morning all the world glitters like spun glass under the rays of the sun.

10. Earl Doorm went away leaving two brawny spearmen.

They advanced each growling like a dog.

The dog's bone is plucked at by the village boys.

The boys like to vex the dog at his meal.

EXERCISE XXXVII

Model.—(1) The Old Guard made one last, grand effort.

The English seemed on the point of giving way.

Blücher's arrival just at that moment checked the exaltation of the French.

(2) The Old Guard made one last, grand effort, and the English seemed on the point of giving way, but Blücher's arrival just at that moment checked the exaltation of the French.

Remark.—Here three simple sentences are combined into one compound sentence of three clauses connected by **different** coördinate conjunctions.

Practice.—Combine the following groups of simple sentences into compound sentences of three clauses united by different coördinate conjunctions. Try to combine the sentences in various ways by means of different conjunctions and different combinations of the same conjunctions.

1. The baron told his longest stories.

He had never told them so well.

They had never been listened to so attentively.

2. The squire stood chuckling and rubbing his hands.

He heard scarcely a word of the parson's harangue.

The latter was discoursing most authentically on the ancient and stately dance of the Pavo or peacock.

3. The butcher's family went even as far as an attempt at patronage.

They actually introduced a French dancing-master into the neighborhood.

The worthy folks of Little Britain, taking fire at this, persecuted the poor Gaul into an indecorous retreat.

4. The Americans at Yorktown did not quail before the fire of the British.

The French did not hesitate one moment.

The British were forced to run up the white flag.

5. Europeans may yield themselves quietly to the sway of an hereditary despot.

Europeans may suffer the greater tyranny of an irresponsible and unjustly-governed Republic.

Americans will never permit a violation of their liberties.

6. England gathered countless armies.

England assembled immense fleets.

Napoleon was almost constantly successful in rendering England's efforts futile.

7. America has never entered into alliances with European nations.

She has not even sought over anxiously for their friendship.

Her rights have always been respected by even the most powerful among them.

8. The United States will buy up the rights to the Panama canal.

The United States will open up the water way through Nicaragua.

In either case there will be untold difficulties to overcome.

9. The hemlock branches hang heavy with snow.

The fern and boulders lie white and still beside the dark running brook.

The charm of the brook has flown.

10. Small streams are generally clear and limpid.

Clearness is impossible in streams with muddy beds.

The brooks watering the great plains of the West are nearly all dyed red by the clay soil.

EXERCISE XXXVIII

Model.—(1) The sexton and his companions had been employed as carpenters for the celebrated Stratford jubilee.

They remembered Garrick, the prime mover of the fête.

He superintended the arrangements.

(2) The sexton and his companions had been employed as carpenters for the celebrated Stratford jubilee and they remembered Garrick, the prime mover of the fête, who had superintended the arrangements.

Remark.—Here three sentences are combined into one compound-complex sentence containing two principal clauses and one dependent clause.

Practice.—Combine the following groups of sentences into compound-complex sentences containing two principal clauses and one dependent clause. It makes no difference where the dependent clause occurs or what principal clause it qualifies.

1. The notary's story was ended.

The blacksmith stood like a man anxious to speak.

All his thoughts were congealed into lines on his face.

2. The tawny grasses are all covered with something like husks,—wheat-colored husks,—large, flat and disposed evenly along the lee side of each swaying stalk.

They present only their edges to the wind.

On approach these husks detach themselves, fluttering away before your eyes,—a whirling flower-drift of sleepy butterflies.

3. The sun lightly fingered the topmost plumes of the great pines.

The door of the cabin in the forest was closed.

A ghostlike wreath of blue smoke curled from the chimney.

4. Short and slender, wasted by sickness, gray before his time, with pale cheeks and wrinkled brow, John of Antioch seemed like a person of no significance,—a reed shaken by the wind.

There was a strange look in his deep-set, poignant eyes.

That look gathered all the glances of the multitude to him.

5. Jason could distinguish the words only confusedly.

Each separate leaf of the tree seemed to be a tongue.

The whole myriad of tongues were babbling at once.

6. The youths furbished up their helmets and shields and trusty swords.

They came thronging to Iolcos.

They clambered on board the new galley.

7. The clouds hold the sun's rays in a sheaf.

Thus a giant holds a handful of spears.

The clouds strike the horizon, touching the extreme edge with a delicate revelation of light.

8. The clouds, round and brilliant, come leaping up from the horizon for hours.

At evening the clouds are bowled by a breeze from behind.

The lusty south wind, rolling them on, can be heard panting for breath.

9. In the great blizzards of the West all landmarks, roadways and trails are obscured in a few minutes.

Travelers perish in them.

They are overcome by the wind, the cold and the driving snow.

10. The upper end of the island is of hard rock and compact gravel.

It cleaves the river in twain, leaving the two halves to spin away on either side.

Thus the waters seem to hurry by the sides of a great ship at full speed.

EXERCISE XXXIX

Model.—(1) The sea finally wears away the projecting headland.

The headland leaves a sunken base a few feet below the surface.

Perhaps there remains one of those fantastic pinnacles or pillars, usually called Devil's Pulpits.

These may be seen along almost any rocky coast.

(2) When the sea finally wears away the projecting headland, it leaves a sunken base a few feet below the surface, or perhaps there remains one of those fantastic pinnacles or pillars called Devil's Pulpits which may be seen along almost any rocky coast.

Remark.—Here four simple sentences are combined into a compound-complex sentence, with four clauses, two principal, two dependent,—each principal clause being qualified by one dependent clause.

Practice.—Combine the following groups of sentences into compound-complex sentences of four clauses as in model. Try to vary character of dependent clauses so that the same kind of dependent clause does not qualify both principal sentences.

1. The Count de Charleu arrived at the French Court.

His excuses were accepted.

A tract of land in Louisiana was granted him.

There afterwards stood Belles Demoiselles Plantation.

2. The golden fleece was hung upon a tree in a sacred grove.

It was the envy of mighty kings.

They had nothing so magnificent in any of their palaces.

It was kept in the grove many years.

3. The fifty heroes on board the Argo held their oars perpendicularly in the air.

Orpheus swept his fingers across the harp.

The vessel gliding into the sea dipped her prow deeply.

The figurehead drank the waves with its marvelous lips.

4. The two winged youths, sons of the North Wind, blustered terribly at the Harpies.

They frightened them with their drawn swords.

The Harpies solemnly promised never to trouble King Phineus again.

The youths had the rough temper of their father.

5. The stream, where smooth, sparkles between great borders of green.

It reflects the blue sky.

It runs over shallows.

It turns to amethyst.

6. Jason, the son of the dethroned king of Colchis, was a little boy.

He was sent away from his parents.

He was placed under a schoolmaster.

You never heard of a queerer schoolmaster.

7. The breeze is too light to be felt.

The stiff sedges whisper to it along a mile of marsh.

To the strong wind they bend showing the silver of their somber little tassels.

So fish show the silver of their sides turning in the pathless sea.

8. Pennsylvania had no seacoast.

It was the only one of the colonies without one.

Penn secured from the Duke of York the proprietorship of Delaware.

He wanted free access to the ocean.

9. There were several good voices in the household.

The effect of the Christmas carol was extremely pleasing.

I was particularly gratified by the exaltation of heart and sudden sally of grateful feeling in the Squire.

He delivered one stanza; his eye glistening and his voice rambling out of all bounds of time and tune.

10. The monastery yard is guarded by a St. Bernard.

His single evil deed has been an attack on a neighboring poet.

He tried to make doggerel of the poet.

This one of the friars told me.

EXERCISE XL

Model.—(1) The contralto bells of the monastery have taught these western hills the “Angelus” of the French fields. They announce the hour of night.

This hour rings with so melancholy a note from the village-belfries on the Adriatic coast.

Then the latest light is passing.

(2) The contralto bells have taught these western hills the "Angelus" of the French fields, and announce the hour of night which rings with so melancholy a note from the village belfries on the Adriatic coast when the latest light is passing.

Remark.—Here four simple sentences are combined into one compound-complex sentence of four clauses, two principal and two dependent, the two dependent sentences attached to one of the principal clauses and one of the dependent clauses dependent on the other.

Practice.—Combine the following groups of sentences into compound-complex sentences in the form *a-abc* or *abc-a*.

1. Jason and his friends slew a great many of the giants.

The rest took to their heels.

The giants had six legs instead of six arms.

They would have served them better to run away with.

2. A sideboard was set out under the armor of the crusader.

On this was a display of plate.

This plate might have vied with Belshazzar's parade of the vessels of the temple: "flagons, cans, cups, beakers, goblets, basins and ewers".

Before these stood the two yule candles, beaming like stars of the first magnitude.

3. Off the children set at last; one on the pony, with the dog bounding and barking before him, and the others holding the servant's hands.

I looked after with a strange feeling.

***For convenience, hereafter, the construction of sentences will be indicated thus: *a* will represent a principal clause; *b*, a clause immediately dependent on the principal clause; *c*, a clause dependent on a *b* clause; *d*, a clause dependent on a *c* clause, etc. Thus the sentence given as a model in Exercise XL is in the form *a-abc*. The hyphen between a group of letters indicates the separation of the coördinate parts—the principal clause with its dependent clauses. Though the *b* and *c* follow the *a* in the formula, they need not do so in the construction. They may precede it.

Either pleasure or sorrow predominated in this feeling.

I do not know which.

4. In the winter the brook is ice-bound.

Its only sound is a gurgle.

The water is still running away to the sea.

The gurgle tells this.

5. Think well of a blade of grass.

Judge.

Of all the gorgeous flowers and of all strong and goodly trees, pleasant to the eyes and good for food,—stately palm and pine, strong oak and ash, scented citron, burdened vine,—is there any by man so deeply loved?

These flowers beam in summer air.

6. It was only a handful of common clay, coarse and heavy.

It had high thoughts of its own value and wonderful dreams of a great place.

This place it was to fill in the world.

The time came for its virtue to be discovered.

7. Demetrius was not a sincere fanatic like the apostate Emperor Julian.

He had won the favor of his royal master.

Julian's vain effort to restore the worship of the heathen gods had opened an easy road to wealth and honors for many.

These mocked Christianity.

8. Champlain was an excellent naturalist.

He has left some of the best descriptions of the Indians.

So they appeared.

They were first seen by the white men.

9. We had a glimpse of Mother Ceres half-hidden among the waving corn.

The four black steeds were swiftly whirling along the chariot.

The beloved Proserpina was unwillingly borne away in the chariot.

You recollect, too, Proserpina's loud screams on sinking into the earth.

10. The Wars of the Roses desolated England for years.

They decimated the nobility.

The commons began to be a feature in the government.

Hitherto they had had little influence in the state.

EXERCISE XLI

Model.—(1) The morning, though frosty, was remarkably fine and clear.

Most of the family walked to the church.

This was a very old building of gray stone.

It stood near a village, about half a mile from the park gate.

(2) The morning, though frosty, was remarkably fine and clear, and most of the family walked to the church, which was a very old building of gray stone and stood near a village, about half a mile from the park gate.

Remark.—This sentence is written in form **a-abb**; that is, it is a compound-complex sentence having two principal clauses and two dependent clauses attached to one of the principal clauses. These dependent clauses are both immediately dependent on their principal clause,—not one on the other.

Practice.—Combine the following groups of sentences into compound-complex sentences of the form **a-abb** or **abb-a**. In order to have the form **abb**, it is not necessary that the dependent clauses be united to the principal by the same conjunctive nor to one another by the same or any conjunctive. Thus the sentence, “Napoleon fled from the field, and, as he rode away through the night, his legions were cut to pieces by the British, whose thirst for French blood it was hard to satisfy,” is in the form **a-abb**.

1. The old angler was a universal favorite in the village.

He was acknowledged the oracle of the tap-room.

There he delighted the rustics with his songs.

There, too, he astonished them with his stories of strange lands and shipwrecks and sea-fights.

2. Of late the sailor's sickness had increased.

His messmates had spread a mattress for him on deck in the shade.

He had taken to his hammock.

He only breathed a wish to see his wife before his death.

3. The beach is sandy and quite flat.

The broken wave pushes its waters in a gentle flood upward in rings and half-circles.

These rings and half-circles are edged with white-beaded foam.

These rings and half-circles, advancing and pausing for a few seconds, take on wonderful and still more wonderful colors.

4. The first fall of snow in the glen produces the picturesque.

The hemlock branches hang heavy.

The fern and bowlders lie white and still beside the dark-running brook.

The charm of the brook has flown.

5. The sea may be terrible to some.

Some have lived upon it or beside it all their lives.

Some know it well.

It is lovable in its stern character and majestic desolation.

6. "My little Proserpina, you are a spoiled child."

"You see the nice things."

"Your appetite will quickly come again."

"My cook will make the nice things for you."

7. Ceres had mistaken the rumbling of the chariot wheels for a peal of thunder.

A shower was coming up.

It would assist her in making the corn grow.

So she imagined.

8. About the break of day the knight was awakened by a great roaring and pounding.

Looking out of the window, he saw the river in flood with black waves.

The black waves were spuming like wild beasts.

They were driving before them great logs and broken trees.

9. Often in our English mornings, the rain-clouds in the dawn form soft level fields.

These melt imperceptibly into the blue.

When of less extent, they gather into apparent bars, crossing the sheets of broader clouds above.

All these rain-clouds are bathed throughout in an unspeakable light of pure rose-color and purple and amber and blue, not shining but misty soft.

10. Moved to its entrails, all the islet of oaks trembled.

The sea magnified its menace.

The sea reached out widely to the trees already fallen.

The rest of the oaks, standing on and striving in line, saved the habitations defended by them.

EXERCISE XLII

Model.—(1) Overhead, in the spring sunshine, the trees whispered together of glory.

The glory descended upon them.

The delicate leaves and blossoms began to expand.

The forest glowed with fair, clear colors.

The dust of thousands of rubies and emeralds was hanging in the soft clouds above the earth.

(2) Overhead, in the spring sunshine, the trees whispered together of the glory which descended upon them when the delicate blossoms and leaves began to expand, and the forest glowed with fair, clear colors as if the dust of thousands of rubies and emeralds were hanging in soft clouds above the earth.

Remark.—Here five sentences are combined into one compound-complex sentence of the form **abc-ab**.

Practice.—Combine the following groups of sentences into compound-complex sentences of the form **abc-ab** or **ab-abc**.

1. The flowers, surprised with the joy of beauty, bent their heads to one another.

The wind caressed them.

They wondered at their fairness.

They had become so lovely.

They made the day bright.

2. The knight and the maid walked in the garden.

The days were fair and still.

The river ran lowly and slowly.

It was full of gentleness.

Its god had never shown such gentleness before.

3. Lowland trees may lean to this side and that.

There is but a meadow breeze.

This bends them.

Pines will always grow straight.

Storm and avalanche may do their worst.

4. His dear mother was now to be taken from him.

Cadmus, bursting into tears, refused to believe.

It was better for her spirit to pass out of the toil, the weariness, the grief and disappointment.

All these had burdened her on earth.

Telephassa at length made him discern this.

5. There was fire in the chimney of the chamber.

Ceres and the little prince were accustomed to sleep in that chamber.

The fire crumbled into great coals and embers.

These lay flickering on the hearth, with the blaze starting up now and then.

The blaze flung a warm and ruddy light upon the walls.

6. In her despair over the loss of her daughter Ceres came to a dreadful resolution.

Not a stalk of grain, nor a blade of grass, nor a potato, nor a turnip, nor any other vegetable good for man or beast would be suffered to grow.

Her daughter was restored.

She even forbade the flowers to bloom.

Somebody's heart would be cheered by their beauty.

7. On Christmas night, 1776, Washington crossed the Delaware in open boats.

The river was full of floating ice.

He marched nine miles through a blinding snowstorm.

He surprised the British under Cornwallis.

The British were altogether unsuspicious of his intentions.

8. There was a noble way in former times of saying things simply and proudly.

Then all men were brave and true.

Not an epitaph within my knowledge breathes a loftier consciousness of family worth and honorable lineage.

All the brothers were brave and all the sisters virtuous.

This, an epitaph of that old day affirms of a noble house.

9. The darkness and fog preceded the dawn.

Some few Indians, breaking through the besiegers in the darkness and fog, escaped into the woods.

The rest were left to their conquerors, to be killed in the swamp like sullen dogs.

They did not implore for mercy.

They would rather in their self-willedness and madness—according to a hostile historian—sit still to be shot through and cut to pieces.

10. It is nature's plan to beat down all mountains into the dust of the plain and the sand of the seashore.

Thus she is beating down the New England hills and the hills of old England.

The plan will take many ages for its fulfillment.

To-day the little hills clapping their hands rejoice as in the days of David.

They will not disappear until the coming of another David.

EXERCISE XLIII

Model.—(1) All night long, Vasda, the swiftest of Artaban's horses, had been waiting, saddled and bridled, in her stall, pawing the ground impatiently and shaking her bit.

She shared the eagerness of her master's purpose.

She did not know its meaning.

The birds had fully roused to their strong, high, joyful chant of morning song.

The song quivered through the white mist lifting lazily from the plain.

The Wise Man was in the saddle, riding swiftly along the highroad.

(2) All night long, Vasda, the swiftest of Artaban's horses, had been waiting, saddled and bridled, in her stall, pawing the ground impatiently and shaking her bit as if she shared the eagerness of her master's purpose though she knew not its meaning, and, before the birds had fully roused to their strong, high, joyful chant of morning song which quivered through the white mist lifting lazily from the plain, the Wise Man was in the saddle, riding swiftly along the highroad.

Remark.—Here six sentences are combined into one compound-complex sentence in the form **abc-abc**.

Practice.—Combine the following groups of sentences into compound-complex sentences of the form **abc-abc**.

1. The Arab master, sharing his evening meal with his hungry horse, feels his soft, moist lips.

They caress the palm of his hand.

They close over the morsel of bread.

He is roused from his bivouac by the gentle stir of a warm, sweet breath.

The breath moves over his face.

The gray dawn breaks from underground.

2. Artaban crossed the level plains of the Nisæans.

There the famous herds of horses galloped away with a thunder of many hoofs.

They heard Vasda approaching.

Artaban crossed the fertile fields of Concabar.

The dust from the threshing floors filled the air with a golden mist.

The mist half hid the huge temple of Astarte with its four hundred pillars.

3. The horse was almost spent.

He had been traveling from morning.

The rider knew this.

He had to reach the temple within three hours.

He would find his comrades.

They were waiting for him.

4. The four black horses immediately broke into a swift gallop.

They rather flew through the air.

They did not run along the earth.

In a moment Proserpina lost sight of the pleasant vale of Enna.

There she had dwelt.

It was far back into the past.

5. Napoleon had overcome coalition after coalition.

These coalitions had often seemed to threaten his downfall.

He felt secure of his empire.

He was on the brink of ruin.

The strength of the French nation was completely sapped.

It could give him no more armies and no more supplies.

6. There has been a saying among the ancient Sibyls.

The grasshopper on top of the Exchange shook hands with the dragon on top of Bow Church steeple.

Fearful events took place.

This strange conjunction has as strangely come to pass.

The same architect, being engaged on the repairs of the cupola of the Exchange and the steeple of Bow Church, threw the grasshopper and the dragon into the yard of his workshop.

There they lie cheek by jowl.

7. The tide rises only about a foot.

This happens on the coast of Florida.

There is no appreciable wearing away of the shore.

It is quite different in the Bay of Fundy.

There it rises some fifty feet with great rapidity.

Its wear on that arrow pointed bay is almost as severe as that of storm waves.

8. A bird, flying towards the king, hovered in the air.

It almost brushed the king's face with its wings.

King Ulysses tried to catch the bird.

It fluttered nimbly out of his reach, still chirping in a piteous tone.

It could have told a lamentable story.

Only it had not been gifted with human language.

9. The pygmies were on a campaign against the cranes.

The cranes were always hostile to the pygmies.

The pygmies, according to some historians, used to go to battle mounted on the backs of goats and rams.

Such animals must have been far too large for the pygmies to ride upon.

Probably they rode on squirrelback or rabbitback or ratback or on hedgehogs.

The prickly quills of the hedgehog would be very terrible to the enemy.

10. All this great plain from one edge of the horizon to the other has been gathered up like a woven garment in the hands of God.

He has shaken it into deep, falling folds.

So the robes droop from a king's shoulders.

All the forests rear themselves aslant against its slopes.

So a rider rears himself.

His horse plunges.

EXERCISE XLIV

Model.—(1) The planet Venus and some of the fixed stars are bright enough to throw at times a long reflecting track upon ruffled water.

The colors produced by them upon landscape are blurred into smudges of dark purple and blue.

The hues of the shadows are vague.

Our eyes cannot perceive them.

(2) The planet Venus and some of the fixed stars are bright enough to throw at times a long reflecting track upon ruffled water, but the colors produced by them upon landscape are blurred into smudges of dark purple and blue, and the hues of the shadows are so vague that our eyes cannot perceive them.

Remark.—Here four sentences are combined into one compound-complex sentence of the form **a-a-ab**.

Practice.—Combine the following groups of sentences into compound-complex sentences of the form **a-a-ab**, **a-ab-a**, or **ab-a-a**.

1. The tree and the bank, the fern and the burning cardinal flower, are mirrored in the dark pools of the stream.

The cloud shadow and the sun-burst are flung across the moving surface.

The path of the moonlight weaves these.

It weaves on the rippling, flowing sea.

2. Thirty years ago the Mississippi was a beautiful river.

It was never more impressive than at night in storm.

The pilot at the wheel was finding the channel-way by lightning flashes.

To-day the charm of its wildness and primitive glory has departed.

3. The mountain stream keeps swishing and swirling all day long, working its way in and out, over and under bed boulders, waterfalls and deep pools.

The swing in of the water towards the shore hollows out pools and deep eddies.

The sand removed from a bank is always deposited a few yards below and on the opposite bank.

There a bar is forming.

4. The knight rushed upon the churls shouting for joy.

There was a great medley of breaking chairs and tables and cursing and smiting.

He gave horrible strokes with his sword.

His strokes put the knaves to flight.

5. Gnarled oaks rose in groves like tidal waves.

Their branches were knotted as if in rage.

Smooth forests of beech trees, round and gray, swept over the knolls and slopes of land in a mighty ground-swell.

Most of all the multitude of pines and firs, innumerable and monotonous, with straight, stark trunks, and branches woven together in an unbroken flood of darkest green, crowded through the valleys and over the hills, rising on the highest ridges into ragged crests, like the foaming edge of breakers.

6. I could not help smiling at this display of small erudition on so whimsical a subject.

The peacocks were birds of some consequence at the Hall.

The squire was extremely careful to keep up the breed.

They belonged to chivalry.

7. The blue abyss of day seemed to yawn over the world more deeply than ever before.

One great noon a sudden change touched the quicksilver smoothness of the waters.

The swaying shadow of a vast motion, a monstrous wrinkle, an immeasurable fold of green water, moved forward swift as a cloud shadow pursued by sunlight.

The whole sea-circle appeared to rise up bodily at the sky.

8. The child sat trembling in the little cabin.

An infinity of flutings and tinklings made by tiny amphibia,—like the low blowing of numberless little tin horns and the clanking of billions of little bells,—was borne to her from the swamp.

At intervals came profound tones vibrant and heavy as a bass-viol—the orchestra of the great frogs.

Interwoven with it all was one continuous shrilling,—keen as the steel speech of a saw,—the stridulous telegraphy of crickets.

9. Appearances are most pacific.

These Louisiana fishermen divine far off tempests like the gulls.
Like the gulls, too, you see their light vessels fleeing landward.
They are rarely lost in the sudden storms of the gulf.

10. Chiron, the schoolmaster of Jason, was one of the people or quadrupeds called Centaurs.

He lived in a cave.

He had the body and legs of a white horse.

His head and shoulders were those of a man.

EXERCISE XLV

Model.—(1) Robert Preston, whilom drawer at the Boar's Head, was buried in a small cemetery immediately under the back windows of the tavern.

One night the ghost of Preston was attracted by the call of "waiter" from the Boar's Head.

The wind was unruly, howling and whistling, banging about doors and windows and twirling weathercocks.

The ghost made its sudden appearance in the midst of a roaring club.

The parish clerk was just singing a stave from the "Merrie Garland of Captain Death".

(2) Robert Preston, whilom drawer at the Boar's Head, was buried in a small cemetery immediately under the back windows of the tavern, and one night, when the wind was unruly, howling and whistling, banging about doors and windows and twirling weathercocks, the ghost of Preston was attracted by the call of "waiter" from the Boar's Head, and made its sudden appearance in the midst of a roaring club just as the parish clerk was singing a stave from the "Merrie Garland of Captain Death".

Remark.—Here five sentences are combined into one compound-complex sentence of the form **a-ab-ab**.

Practice.—Combine the following groups of sentences into

compound-complex sentences of the form **a-ab-ab**, **ab-ab-a**, or **ab-a-ab**.

1. The broken-hearted father closed the door reverently.

He was shutting it on the dead.

He went downstairs.

He threw himself almost fainting with despair and fatigue on the sofa.

The world outside awoke to a new day with all its countless and joyous activities and duties.

2. It was a hasty summons.

The followers of Peveril were well accustomed to the sound of "Boot and Saddle".

They were soon mounted in order.

In all the form and with some of the dignity of danger they proceeded to escort the Countess of Derby across the hilly and desert tract of country.

This tract connects the frontier of the shire with the neighboring shire of Cheshire.

3. Then the travelers passed a larger group of dwellings.

All were silent and unlighted.

Beyond they saw a great house with many outbuildings and inclosed courtyards.

The hounds bayed furiously.

There was no other sign of life.

4. The bright crimson of autumn had long since disappeared from the trees, bleached away by the storms and the cold.

There were some withered leaves,—torn and faded banners of the departed summer.

The leaves still clung to the branches of the oak.

To-night these tattered remnants of glory were red.

They looked like ancient blood-stains against the dark-blue sky.

5. Grouchy had come up in time.

Waterloo might have been saved to the French.

They looked all day and in vain for their reserve.

They saw the dust of Blücher's columns in the distance.

They knew their doom.

6. The people of England did not suspect Monk of any dissatisfaction with the Commonwealth.

He cherished affection for the Stuarts.

The people did not imagine it.

He restored the ancient dynasty.

There was little murmuring against him.

7. The clouds go scudding before the summer breezes.

In other lands the shadow of the clouds glides across the meadows covered with buttercups and daisies.

It climbs the wooded mountains to vanish over the ridge.

The hills and moors of Scotland always seem the best playground for the sunburst and the flying shadow.

Those hills and moors are bare and without beauty.

8. The sphinx is one of the oldest monuments raised by man.

With its face to the sun and its back to the desert it has felt the far-traveling waves of sand lapping its shoulders for centuries.

One does not know how many centuries of desolation.

The sands were there.

It was carved.

9. Artaban would keep the appointed hour with the other wise men.

He must indeed ride wisely.

He knew Vasda's strength.

He pushed forward without anxiety, making the fixed distance every day.

He had to travel late into the night and in the morning long before sunrise.

10. I came down through the mountains.

The city of Salome was not easy to find.

I looked from a distant shoulder of the hills for the little bay full of greenery.

The bay was not to be seen.

There was only a white town shining far off against the brown cliffs, like a flake of mica in a cleft of the rocks.

EXERCISE XLVI

Model.—(1) Just at sundown, a beautiful cloud-bridge grew up.

The bridge arched the sky with a single span of cottony pink vapor.

With the dying of the iridescent day, the bridge swung round to make way for the coming of the gale.

The light bridges swing open at the long, bellowing signal of the luggermen's conch-shells.

Those bridges traverse the dreamy Teche.

(2) Just at sundown a beautiful cloud-bridge grew up and arched the sky with a single span of cottony-pink vapor, but with the dying of the iridescent day, the bridge swung round to make way for the coming of the gale, even as the light bridges, that traverse the dreamy Teche, open at the long, bellowing signal of the luggermen's conch-shells.

Remark.—Here five simple sentences are combined into one compound-complex sentence of the form **a-a-abc**.

Practice.—Combine the following groups of sentences into compound-complex sentences of the form **a-a-abc**, **a-abc-a**, or **abc-a-a**.

1. The glen had been called by strangers the Hollow of the Fairies.

The neighbors were more cautious in speaking of the place.

They avoided giving it a name from an idea then prevalent and still retained in Scotland.

Someone speaks good or ill of this capricious race of imaginary beings.

He provokes their resentment.

2. A pygmy climbed upon the giant's shoulder.

He took a view around the horizon as from the summit of a hill.

He beheld something a long way off.

The something made him rub the bright specks of his eyes.

The something was very ominous.

3. The streams in the mountains move in showers of silver.

They are clothed with rainbows.

They bring health and life to everything within their reach.

In level lands they creep in dark eddies by unwholesome banks.

The banks stain their waters putrid black or muddy red.

4. The American people knew of no treaty with the Filipinos.

Dewey denied the existence of any.

The political opponents of the ruling party in the United States claimed an agreement equivalent to a treaty.

The Americans were assaulting Manila.

The insurgents, supplied with American arms, fought side by side with our men.

5. The knight's belongings were numbered among the train of baggage.

The baggage attended upon the Abbot's party.

The knight had the good fortune to find this out.

He turned his horse's head.

He accompanied the Abbot to the tower of Glendearg.

6. The wave-tossed, wind-beaten surface of the North Atlantic does not reflect the tints of the heavens.

From the smooth equatorial swell, all the light and warmth and glow of the skies are cast back as from a mountain lake.

Every opaline flush upon the cloud, every pale-lilac of the horizon-vapors, every green and gold of the barred sky at sunset, repeats its image in the slow-heaving wave.

The vast water seems but an inverted sky.

In that sky swims a realm of light and color.

7. Moisture gathering about tiny dust particles in the air makes raindrops.

The raindrops are covered with an elastic skin.

They may be wrapped in an elastic envelope.

This skin or envelope prevents them from breaking.

They come in contact with an outside body.

8. At the beginning of the Civil War, the North did not appreciate the determination of the South.

The South did not realize the strength of the North.

They would continue the struggle.

One or the other could not raise a hand.

They were both resolved on this.

9. Under the old charter the governors were the representatives of the people.

Their way of living had probably been marked by a popular simplicity.

They should preserve the dignity of their station by the practice of high and gorgeous ceremonials.

Now they thought this necessary.

They represented the person of the king.

10. The blizzard suddenly overtakes the wayfarer.

He is far from home.

He will wander on aimlessly through the blinding storm.

He will sink into some pitfall hidden by the drifted now.
In neither case will he ever see home again.

EXERCISE XLVII

Model.—(1) The old master has spent much of his life in the smoky, noisy, buzzing schoolroom.

He has a holiday.

He feels himself a stranger in the world.

Forth he goes.

There stands his old chair, vacant and solitary.

The good master Cheever resumes his seat in it to-morrow morning.

(2) The old master has spent so much of his life in the smoky, noisy, buzzing schoolroom that, when he has a holiday, he feels himself a stranger in the world, but forth he goes, and there stands his old chair, vacant and solitary, till good master Cheever resumes his seat in it to-morrow morning.

Remark.—Here six simple sentences are combined into one compound-complex sentence of the form **abc-a-ab**.

Practice.—Combine the following groups of sentences into compound-complex sentences of the form **a-ab-abc**, it making no difference to which of the **a** clauses the **b** or **bc** clauses are attached.

1. The trees grew heavily and stiffly from the level line of the plain.
They seemed weakly and unshapely.

Bending themselves against the mountain side, they assume strange curves of strength and grace.

They breathe more freely.

They toss their branches more carelessly.

Each climbs higher, looking to the clear light above the topmost leaves of its brother tree.

2. Back from the sea, in the summer time, lie white furnaces of blasting sand.

These are the broad beds of the river gods.

Nearer the coast the soft wings of the Sea Angel droop with dew.

Faltering on the hills are the shadows of the Angel's plumes.

These shadows are the strange laughings and glitterings of silver streamlets.

These streamlets twine about the mossy heights in trickling tinsel.

3. At the beginning of the revolutionary war, England foresaw no grave danger in the American uprising.

France had little hope of our ultimate success.

France was friendly to us.

The Americans were as strong after several years of struggle as at the beginning.

They perceived this.

Both France and England changed their plans and purposes.

4. Arimathean Joseph brought the Holy Grail to Glastonbury.

There the winter thorn blooms at Christmas.

There awhile the Grail abode.

A man could see the cup.

The cup was visible only to those free from stain of sin.

The man was healed, by faith, of all his ills.

5. Dame Elspeth left an able substitute in the kitchen.

She could entrust nothing to Mary Avenel's care.

Mary had been brought up so.

Regretting this, Dame Elspeth hastily donned her best attire.

The Abbot crossed her humble threshold.

With a beating heart, she presented herself at the door of her little tower to make obeisance to the Lord Abbot.

6. A second sight could peer into the houses and the hearts of men.

I possessed a second sight.

I have often wished for this.

This is not possible.

We know the interior of brick walls.

We can but guess the mystery of human bosoms.

7. Roland Graeme slept long and sound.

The sun was high over the horizon.

The voice of his companion summoned him to resume his pilgrimage.

He hastily arranged his dress.

He went to attend her call.

The enthusiastic matron stood already at the threshold, prepared for her journey.

8. We, in England, have our new street, our new inn, our green shaven lawn and our piece of ruin emergent from it,—a mere specimen of the middle ages put on a bit of velvet carpet to be shown.

But for its size, it might as well be on the museum shelf at once, under cover.

On the Continent, the links are unbroken between the past and the present.

The gray-headed wrecks are suffered to stay with men.

They are of some use.

For this use they serve.

9. Other trees, tufting crag or hill, yield to the form and sway of the ground.

They clothe it with some compliance, being partly its subjects, partly its flatterers, partly its comforters.

The pine rises in serene resistance, self-contained.

I can never without awe stay long under a great Alpine cliff, looking up to its companies of pine.

They stand on the inaccessible juts and perilous ledges of the enormous wall.

There each is like the shadow of the one beside it,—upright, fixed, spectral, as troops of ghosts standing on the walls of Hades.

10. The mere power of familiarity with the clouds, of walking with them and above them, alters our whole conception of the baseless architecture of the sky.

It renders that conception clear.

There is beauty in all the white heaps of cloud.

These heaps fill the arched sky of the plain from one horizon to the other.

There is more beauty in a single wreath of early cloud, pacing its way up an avenue of mountain pine, or pausing among the points of their fringes

EXERCISE XLVIII

Model.—(1) I cannot tell thee half of the strange pleasures and thoughts.

They come about me at the sight of that old tower.

Everything makes Europe interesting as opposed to new countries.

In some sort this tower is the epitome of that everything.

You yourself may see it some day.

You will experience the same delights.

(2) I cannot tell thee half of the strange pleasures and thoughts that come about me at the sight of that old tower, for, in some sort, it is the epitome of everything that makes Europe interesting, as opposed to new countries; but, if you yourself see it some day, you will experience the same delights.

Remark.—Here six simple sentences are combined into one compound-complex sentence of the form **abcd-ab**.

Practice.—Combine the following groups of sentences into compound-complex sentences of the form **abcd-ab** or **ab-abcd**.

1. That indefatigable spirit, Master Simon, had conceived the idea of a Christmas mummery or masking.

He was faithfully discharging his duties as lord of misrule.

He had called to his assistance the Oxonian and the young officer.

Anything would occasion romping or merriment.

They were equally ripe for it.

They would carry his plans into instant effect.

2. He was anticipated at the place of rendezvous by Arnold.

Arnold had named it.

Any object visible near the huge gray stone should apprise him.

Andre cast many an anxious glance to see this.

The American general had already reached the place of meeting.

The flutter of a blue cloak soon made Andre aware of this.

3. I have no respect for titled rank.

It is accompanied by true nobility of soul.

In all countries, the very highest classes are always the most modest and unassuming.

They might be expected to claim some special marks of respect.

Artificial distinctions between classes exist.

I have remarked this.

4. The hole kept growing deeper and deeper.

It seemed to have no bottom.

Proserpina stood straining her eyes into the depths.

She was frightened.

She was not able to run away from the four sable horses.

They came tearing out of the earth with a splendid golden chariot whirling at their heels.

5. Sadness comes upon youth.

It has little reason in it.

It has all the more weariness and gloom.

The man oppressed by it feels deeply.

He is tired of living.

He has not fairly begun to live.

6. The mountain flowers find out for themselves unapproachable places.

They can gather into happier fellowships.

They fear no evil from the plow.

They fell before the plow on the plain.

They breathe freely in their mountain fastnesses.

The birds sing above them.

7. With crumbling stones were formed the most majestic mountain forms.

They were consistent with the safety of man.

The peaks were lifted high and steep.

They still permitted the shepherd to feed his flocks on the slopes.

The slopes were darkened by the shadows.

The peaks cast the shadows.

8. The wise man looked up at the mountain.

It thrust its immense rugged brow out over the road.

He saw the figure of King Darius trampling upon his fallen foes.

The proud list of his wars and conquests was graven high upon the face of the eternal cliff.

What the greatness of the Persians once was!

Future generations might know it.

9. The enfolding hills unclosed like leaves.

I was gazing at them in wonder.

In the heart of them I saw a flower, bright, beautiful.

My eyes filled with tears.

I looked.

It was like a face smiling at me and promising something.

10. Lancelot warded without distress.

The young knight was blind with sweat.

Then Lancelot smote him a mighty stroke upon the head, but with the flat of his sword.

He fell over the croup of his horse.
He was a man slain.
He was only stunned.

EXERCISE XLIX

Model.—(1) I passed through the hall on my way to my chamber.

The dying embers of the yule log still sent forth a dusky glow.

The glow half lighted the deserted place.

It was too cold to stir abroad.

I should have been tempted to steal from my room to peep.

The fairies might be at their revels about the hearth.

(2) As I passed through the hall on my way to my chamber, the dying embers of the yule log still sent forth a dusky glow which half lighted the deserted place, and, had it not been too cold to stir abroad, I should have been half-tempted to steal a peep whether the fairies might not be at their revels about the hearth.

Remark.—Here six simple sentences are combined into one compound-complex sentence of the form **abb-abb**.

Practice.—Combine the following groups of sentences into compound-complex sentences of the form **abb-abb**.

1. There is nothing opaque about a bank of cloud.

We will find this out.

We look at an early morning fog.

We speak of it as gray and monotonous in color.

It is often full of delicate pinks, lilacs and pale-yellows.

We have only to contrast it with engine steam to find this.

2. Some are no doubt good architects.

They are advising John Bull to remodel his ancient manor-house.

They might be of service.

They get to work with their mattocks on the venerable edifice.

They never stop.

They bring the house to the ground.

3. The pinnacles rose from their roofs.

The verandas ran around them.

All the houses were different in the number and shape of the pinnacles and in the trimmings of the verandas.

They put their best foot forward.

They made a brave show.

In this they were alike.

4. The burnt hills encircled the great lake.

On the burnt hills were the haunts.

There he hunted the bear.

The ice went out in the spring.

All along the streams the great trout will be leaping in rapids and pools.

He has known these rapids and pools from boyhood.

5. In later days multitudes of people came to put questions to the oracle at Delphi.

A spacious temple of marble was erected over the spot.

That spot was supposed to be the exact middle of the world.

In the days of Cadmus there was only a rustic bower, with its abundance of green foliage and a tuft of shrubbery.

The tuft of shrubbery ran wild over the mysterious hole in the hillside.

I have told you.

6. Three British armies were sent into New York in 1777.

An advantage would give them possession of the state.

They were unable to gain that advantage.

The fall had set in.

Burgoyne found himself falling back on Saratoga.

There he was forced to surrender the remains of his army,—six thousand men.

7. The whole restless, shifting sea flickered green.

From horizon to shore ran one uninterrupted heaving—one vast green swarming of snaky shapes.

They rolled in to hiss and flatten on the sand.

No single speck of cloud revealed itself through all the violet heights.

The sea had been upheaved from beneath.

You might have fancied this.

8. The night mists first rise from off the plains.
 Watch their white and lake-like fields.
 They float in level bays and winding gulfs about the island summits of the lower hills.
 The first sunbeam is sent upon the silver channels.
 The foam of their undulating surface, parting, passes away.
 Watch.
9. The sun smolders among the torn, snow-white rags of vapor.
 On a rainy evening in the Alps the sun burns like a red-hot ball of fire beside you.
 You stand upon the mountain side.
 It plunges through the rushing wind and rolling cloud with headlong fall.
 It dyes all the air around it with blood.
 It means to rise no more.
10. The rocks are smoothed by old glaciers into long, dark, billowy swellings, like the backs of plunging dolphins.
 Along the ridges of the rocks the peasant watches the slow coloring of the tufts of moss and roots of herb.
 These, little by little, gather a feeble soil over the iron substance.
 The peasant supports the narrow strip of clinging ground with a few stones.
 He subdues it to the spade.
 In a year or two a little crest of corn is seen waving on this rocky casque.

EXERCISE L

Practice.—Combine the following groups of sentences into single sentences of the forms indicated.

1. **abbbcc.**

The boy entered a vast cavern.
 He beheld a mighty beam of light.
 The beam sprang from the ground.

***In Exercises L and LI the form of the sentence to be constructed will be indicated as heretofore by the letters *a*, *b*, *c*, etc. It is to be noted in Exercise LI that if only one *a* is mentioned there will be only one clause and the sentence will be simple.

The beam shattered itself in countless sparks against the roof.
The sparks fell.
They flowed all together into a great pool in the rock.

2. abc.

The moss grew over the stone thicker and thicker.
At last it looked almost like a soft green seat.
From the seat only a few gray knobs of granite peeped out.

3. a-abb.

On the third day the young prince bade a respectful farewell to his grandfather.

After affectionately embracing his mother, he set forth with a good many of her tears and some others glistening on his cheeks.

The truth must be told.

The other tears had gushed out of his own eyes.

4. a-a-a.

The mosses will not be gathered for chaplet or love token.

The wild bird will make its nest of them.

The wearied child will make his pillow of them.

5. a-abb-a.

Lichens, sharing the stillness of the unimpassioned rock, share also its endurance.

The winds of departing spring scatter the white hawthorn blossoms like drifted snow.

Summer dims on the parched meadow the drooping of its cowslip gold.

Far above, among the mountains, the silver lichen-spots rest, star-like, on the stone.

The gathering orange stain upon the edge of yonder western peak reflects the sunset of a thousand years.

6. ab.

The serried pines and the lighted fields and the golden ricks of the farms are dyed with the sun.

One might paint with a color.

7. a-ab-a-a.

Lights and shadows break across the hills and valleys of the ocean world.

The pupils of the fishes' eyes contract with those lights.

They expand with those shadows.

How dim must be those lights.

How densely dark must be those shadows.

8. ab-ab.

The dripping radiance was cool.
It softly trickled down the walls of the great cavern.
The light was pale blue.
It rippled from the cavern walls.

9. abcc.

I had been toiling all day long through heavy sand and grass.
A gate opened in the wall of the mountains.
The plain ran in through the gate, making a little bay of level country among the hills.
Suddenly, toward evening, I came upon this place.

10. a-abcd.

The young prince looked.
The rock had been placed over another slab of stone, containing a cavity within it.
The prince saw this.
The rock somewhat resembled a roughly made chest or coffer.
The upper mass of the coffer had served as a lid.

11. ab-abc-ab-ab.

Procrustes had a bed in his cavern.
With great show of hospitality he invited his guests to lie down on this bed.
The bed was short.
They happened to be shorter.
The wicked villain stretched them out by main force.
They were too tall.
He lopped off their heads or feet.
He had done this.
He laughed at it as an excellent joke.

12. a-ab-a-ab.

The bay of level country was not brown and hard and dry like the mountains above me.
It was not covered with tawny billows of sand like the desert.
I had wearily coasted along the edge of the desert.
The surface of the bay was smooth and green.
The winds of twilight breathed across it.
They were followed by soft waves of verdure, with silver turnings of the under-sides of many leaves, like ripples on a quiet harbor.

13. ab-a-a-abc.

Scinis was in the habit of flinging men off a high cliff into the sea.

He had murdered the men.

To give him exactly his deserts Theseus tossed him off the very same place.

The sea would not pollute itself by receiving the murderer into its bosom.

The earth, having once got rid of him, would not consent to take him back.

Scinis stuck fast in the air, between the cliff and the sea.

The air was forced to bear the burden of his crimes.

14. ab-ab.

The fog along the shore is seen from a high place.

It is not unlike a cloud below one in an Alpine valley.

With the sunlight beating upon it, the fleecy spun-silver effect is beautiful.

It is beautiful, too, on the cloud.

15. a-ab.

The small islands off the coast of Maine are remarkable for cloud effects.

In cold weather the effect is truly splendid.

The fog turns the bare trees into traceries of silver.

16. a-abbb.

The falling leaves and crumbling tree trunks, in the woods, have been molded by nature into a deep, brown humus, clean and fragrant.

In the woods, the sunlight filters green and golden through interlacing branches.

In the woods, pure moisture of distilling rains and melting snows is held in treasury by never-failing banks of moss, under the verdurous flood of the forest, like seaweeds under the ocean waves.

In the woods, three magic vines put forth their hands with joy.

They spread over rock and hillock and twisted tree root and moldering log, in cloaks and scarfs and wreaths of tiny ever-green, glossy leaves.

17. a-abc.

The friends of the dreamer looked on with strange and alien eyes.

A veil of doubt and mistrust came over their faces, like a fog creeping up from the marshes to hide the hills.

They glanced at each other with looks of wonder and pity.

They had listened to incredible sayings.

18. a-ab-a.

Far over the eastern plain a white mist stretched like a lake.

The distant mountain peaks serrated the western horizon.

The sky was clear.

Jupiter and Saturn rolled together like drops of lambent flames about to blend in one.

19. **abb.**

The star of the Magi, tiny and infinitely remote, yet perfect in every part, pulsated in the enormous vault.

Jewels of sapphire and ruby and pearl had mingled.

They had been transformed into a living heart of light.

20. **abcccc.**

The old king's aspect was stately and majestic.

His years and infirmities weighed heavily upon him.

Each year was a lump of lead.

All were bundled together.

All were laid upon his shoulders.

Each infirmity was a ponderous stone.

21. **abbc-ab-ab.**

The sobs and groans and shrieks were caused by the woe of the Athenians.

The city was filled with sobs and groans and shrieks.

Fourteen victims were to be chosen by lot to feed the Minotaur.

The fatal day had come.

Their sons and daughters might be taken from the old people.

They feared this.

The youths and damsels might be destined to glut the maws of the detestable bull of Minos.

The youths and damsels themselves dreaded this.

22. **a-ab-a-a.** (*b* qualifies second and third *a*.)

A cloud passes across the face of the sun.

Its edges may turn to molten silver.

Its thicker portions glow with light.

The beam does not get through.

The falling shaft is not seen.

23. **a-a-ab.**

The flying shadows of clouds at night are dark purple in tone.

They are sometimes weird in shape.

They are not usually noticed.

The night is very bright.

24. **a-ab-a.** (*b* qualifies second and third *a*.)

The panic of the steed had given his unskillful rider an apparent advantage in the chase.

He had gotten half way through the hollow.

The girths of the saddle gave way.

The rider felt it slipping from under him.

25. *abc-ab-a.*

The clamor and the clang of arms passed down the street.

The headlong fury of the chase sweeps by the secret covert.

The trembling deer is hidden in the covert.

The recluse reëntered his cottage.

He turned his face to the east.

He prayed.

26. *a-abcdd.*

Stand upon the peak of some isolated mountain at daybreak.

You shall see the scattered mists rallying in the ravines and floating up towards you along the winding valleys.

They couch in bright masses, iridescent with morning light, upon the broad breasts of the higher hills.

Their leagues of massy undulation will melt back and back into that robe of material light.

They fade away, lost in its luster.

They appear again above, in the serene heaven, like a wild impossible dream, foundationless and inaccessible, their bases vanishing in the unsubstantial and mocking blue of the lake below.

27. *abbbc.*

Rain is near.

Out of the pale blue of the horizon, you will see forming and advancing a troop of narrow, dark, pointed vapors.

They will take the light off the landscape with an eclipse.

They will cover the sky, inch by inch, with their gray network.

The eclipse will stop the singing of the birds and the motion of the leaves together.

28. *a-abc-b.*

Our wars have set forth the military genius and daring prowess of our soldiers.

We examine the facts, even of prejudiced historians.

Historians have written about them.

We find them displaying vigorous minds, fertility in expedients, contempt of suffering and hardship, unconquerable resolution.

These (qualities) command our sympathy and applause.

29. a-abc.

The vessel went bounding onward toward the island of Crete.

The master of the vessel could hear the brazen clangor of Talus' footsteps.

He trod heavily upon the sea-beaten rocks.

Some of the rocks were seen to crack and crumble beneath the giant's weight.

30. abbcdd.

The giant Talus might destroy how many innocent people!

He would smash the vessels of the Athenians into a thousand pieces without heeding this.

He would fetch his great club down slam bang.

There seemed nothing else to be expected.

There is seldom any mercy in a giant.

There is quite as little in a piece of clockwork.

31. abb.

Joseph had power in the palaces of Egypt.

Solomon, throned between the lions in Jerusalem, saw the most extravagant magnificence about him.

No son of Abraham will ever again rival the power of Joseph or the magnificence of Solomon.

32. abb-ab.

The light is a new glory.

The world is waiting for it.

It shall rise out of patient and triumphant suffering.

The kingdom is to be established forever.

The kingdom is a new kingdom, the royalty of unconquerable love.

33. a-a-ab.

The line of shadow and sunshine ran near the tops of the trees.

The house of the herdsman was in shadow.

From the chimney-top a thin, blue column of smoke arose.

The smoke ascended, slowly expanding into the evening air.

34. a-abc-a-a.

An unknown hand put a piece of moulded clay into an oven.

The heats of summer brooded upon the bank of the river,—the clay's old home.

The heats of summer were hot.

Hotter fire were kindled about the clay.

Through all the day the clay held itself together.

It endured its trials in the confidence of a great future.

35. *abb.*

Wait till the hour before sunrise.

The east becomes purple again.

The heaving mountains, rolling against it in darkness like waves of a wild sea, are drowned one by one in the glory of its burning.

36. *abbc.*

A silken and embroidered muffler, one of the few articles of more costly attire, was devoted to the purpose of wrapping up and concealing the sacred volume.

She possessed this article of more costly attire.

For want of a fitting interpreter much must remain to her a book closed and a fountain sealed.

Lamenting only this (last), she was to regard the volume as her chiefest treasure.

37. *ab-ab-ab.*

The tower was situated on a knoll.

Beyond the knoll the hills grew more steep.

They narrowed on a brook.

They scarce left a footpath.

There the glen terminated in a wild waterfall.

At the waterfall a slender thread of water dashed in a precipitous line of foam over two or three precipices.

38. *ab-abb.*

The pride of ancestry rankled in the breasts of the ancient gentry of the Highlands.

It was more openly expressed by their ladies.

It was embittered not a little by the political feuds of the time.

The Southron chiefs were friends to the authority of the Queen

They were very jealous of the power of Murray.

39. *abcc.*

The young princess led the young prince along by the hand.

They came to a dark shadowy grove.

The moonlight wasted itself on the tops of the trees.

It did not shed so much as a glimmering ray upon their pathway.

40. *abbcc.*

In the vast and complex stream of being each of us counts for less than a drop.

Individual existences are eliminated in the pulsing of a nation's life with never a pause in its mighty murmur.

Individual existence is replaced in the same way.

So the blood loses its corpuscles without a variance in the volume and vigor of its current.

So too the blood replaces its corpuscles.

Few of us have been made to comprehend this.

41. a-abcd.

Now nearer, now farther off, resounded the cry of the monster.

The sound was fierce, cruel, ugly,—like a bull's roar, and withal so like a human voice, and yet like neither of them.

The brave heart of the deliverer grew sterner and angrier at every step.

Such a monster had the audacity to exist.

He felt it an insult to the moon and sky and Mother Earth.

42. abc.

On a quiet day, in the Gulf of Mexico, all is calm save the low land under your feet.

You almost forget the land.

It seems only as a tiny green flake afloat in the liquid eternity of day.

43. ab-abbc.

A hurricane destroyed Last Island.

On that night Donaldsonville, one hundred and ten miles away, trembled at the towering tide of the Lafourche.

Lakes strove to burst their boundaries.

Far off river steamers tugged wildly at their cables.

They shivered like tethered creatures.

Tethered creatures hear by night the approaching howl of the destroyer.

44. ab-abbccd.

During the revolutionary war the states had agreed upon a kind of constitution.

This they called the Articles of Confederation.

They were afraid of conferring too much power on Congress.

It might encroach upon the state governments.

It might swallow them up.

No power of taxation was given to Congress.

It had no money.

It was hard for it to preserve either dignity or authority.

45. abcc.

The young Count was tranquilly pursuing his route in a sober jog-trot way.

Thus a man travels toward matrimony.

His friends have taken all the trouble and uncertainty of courtship off his hands.

A bride is waiting for him, as certainly as a dinner at the end of a journey.

46. abbbbcb.

Spacious coves indent the eastern shore of the Hudson.

A broad expansion of the river was denominated by the ancient Dutch navigators the Tappan Zee.

There they always prudently shortened sail.

There they implored the protection of St. Nicholas.

They crossed the river.

In the bosom of one of those spacious coves and at that expansion lies a small market town or rural port.

By some it is called Greensburgh.

It is more generally and properly known by the name of Tarrytown.

47. abcccdcd.

He died.

He should be buried in a green spot.

The old gentleman made it his particular request.

He could see the spot from his seat in church.

He was a boy.

He had marked out the spot ever since then.

He was far from home on the raging sea.

He had thought of that spot.

His father and mother had been buried there.

48. abcd-abcc.

The old gentleman had been roughly used in different countries.

So is a poor sheep handled.

It is fleeced by every hedge and thicket.

Yet he spoke of every nation with candor and kindness.

He had been an unfortunate adventurer in America.

He had honesty and magnanimity enough to take the fault to his own door and not to curse the country.

He was almost the only man of this kind.

I had met few.

49. a-ab-abb.

Weak lowland trees may struggle fondly for the last remnants of life.

They are cut down.

They may send up feeble saplings again from their roots.

The lordly mountain trees perish boldly.

Their dying is perfect and solemn.

They give up their lives without reluctance and forever.

50. abbcdd-ab. (Last *b* is the quotation used as a clause in apposition to "words".)

You follow beneath arching boughs, all veiled and dim with blossom, the winding mountain paths.

The paths for ever droop and rise over the green banks and mounds.

The banks and mounds sweep down in scented undulation to the blue water.

They are studded here and there with new-mown heaps of hay filling all the air with fainter sweetness.

Look up towards the higher hills.

Here the waves of everlasting green roll silently into their long inlets among the shadows of the pines.

We may perhaps know the meaning of those quiet words of the 147th Psalm.

"He maketh grass to grow upon the mountains".

EXERCISE LI

Practice.—Combine the following groups of sentences into single sentences of the form indicated. It will be noticed that the sentences given are more numerous than the clauses required in the single sentence to be formed from them. This merely means that, to reduce the sentences given to the form required, some of the given sentences will have to be changed to *phrases*—substantive, adjective, or adverbial. The dependent clause may have to qualify immediately some of these phrases.

1. ab.

There were fields of corn, filled with silken rustling.

There were vineyards with long rows of trimmed maple trees standing each one like an emerald goblet.

The emerald goblet was wreathed with vines.

The earth had been embroidered with threads of blue and scarlet and gold.

There were flower gardens as bright as the earth.

There were olive orchards.

The olive orchards were frosted over with delicate and fragrant blossoms.

2. ab.

The fire on the altar rose with the chant of the worshipers.

The fire throbbed.

The flame responded to the music.

It cast a bright illumination through the whole temple.

It revealed its simplicity and splendor.

3. ab.

The Magian watched the heavens.

A steel-blue spark was born out of the darkness beneath the horizon.

It rounded itself with purple splendors to a crimson sphere.

It spired upward through rays of saffron and orange into a point of white radiance.

4. a-a.

The enchantress heard a great noise of hissing snakes.

Behold! there were her fiery chariot and four huge winged serpents.

They were wriggling in the air.

They were flourishing their tails high in air.

They were all ready to set off on an aerial journey.

5. ab.

The clouds are round and large.

Their shadows slip along majestically from crag to lake.

Again they slip from lake to crag.

They glide noiselessly and without obstruction up and down and over the moors.

They are like dark peering spirits.

The spirits seek a hiding place.

The spirits never find it.

6. a.

The forests could be changed into infinite orchards.

Who prevents the dark forests, ghostly and uninhabitable, from this?

The orchards would wreath the hills with frail floretted snow.

They would stretch far away to the half-lighted horizon of April.
They would flush the face of all the autumnal earth with glow of clustered fruit.

7. abc.

How is that snowy arch of cloud stayed there?
It never forms but over the supreme crest of the mountain.
It is bent like a bow above the snowy summit.
Apparently it is repelled from the snow.
It nowhere touches the snow.
It is poised.
So a white bird hovers over its nest.

8. ab-a.

How is the barbed strength of those war-clouds bridled?
They gather on the horizon.
They are dragon-crested.
They are tongued with fire.
What bits are they champing with their vaporous lips?
They fling off flames of black foam.

9. ab-ab.

Theseus and his companions approached the entrance of the harbor of Crete.

The brass giant Talus straddled across the entrance.
A foot was firmly planted on each headland.
He uplifted his club to a great height.
Its butt end was hidden in a cloud.
He stood in that formidable posture.
The sun gleamed all over his metallic surface.

10. a-a.

At morning, after a night of fog in the Alps, you will hear the sudden rush of awakened wind.

You will see the watch-towers of vapor.
They are swept away from their foundations.
Waving curtains of opaque rain are let down into the valleys.
The curtains swing from the burdened clouds in black, bending fringes.

They pace in pale columns along the lake level.
They graze its surface into foam.

11. a-a.

Along the Gulf of Mexico on the fairest days, a southern breeze may bring you a strange odor.

It is singular enough to startle you from your dreams,—a strong, sharp smell as of fish-oil.

You gaze at the sea.

You may be still more startled at the sudden apparition of great oleaginous patches.

These patches spread over the water.

They sheet over the swells.

12. a-a-ab.

The waves were running at a sharp angle to the shore.

They began to carry fleeces.

They were like an innumerable flock of vague green shapes.

They are driven to the land by the wind to be despoiled of their ghostly wool.

The eye could follow the line of beach far.

All the slope was white with the great shearing of the waves.

13. abc.

They were giving so many young people to be eaten up by the Minotaur.

The creature would have preferred a fat ox or even a large pig to the plumpest of them.

They were in the first bloom and rose blossom of their lives.

How much human happiness would be needlessly thrown away?

Ariadne, the king's daughter, wept at the idea.

14. abcc.

The hero still went on.

Now he was creeping through a low arch.

Now he was ascending a flight of steps.

Now he was in one crooked passage.

Now he was in another.

Here a door opened before him.

There a door banged behind him.

The walls spun round.

They whirled him along with them.

It really seemed so.

15. a-a.

The wind has waned.

The wind sinks slowly back to its abysses.

It abandons its plunder.

It scatters its piteous waifs over bar and dune.

It scatters them over shoal and marsh.

It scatters them among the silences of the mango swamps.

It scatters them over the long, low reaches of sand grasses and drowned weeds for more than a hundred miles.

16. a.

A combination of manly and delicate accomplishments fitted the royal poet, James, to shine in active and elegant life.

These same accomplishments were calculated to give him an intense relish for joyous existence.

His was an age of bustle and chivalry.

To pass the springtime of his years in monotonous captivity must have been a severe trial.

17. abc. (c clause dependent on a phrase.)

It is delightful to saunter along the limpid streams.

They wander, like veins of silver, through the bosom of this beautiful country.

They lead one through a diversity of home scenery.

They sometimes wind through ornamented grounds.

They sometimes brim along through rich pasturage.

There the fresh green is mingled with sweet-smelling flowers.

Sometimes they venture in sight of villages and hamlets.

Then they run capriciously away into shady retirements.

18. abc. (bc dependent on one object of "described".—Use one verb and multiple objects separated by semicolons.)

How can one knowing mosses and lichens describe the rounded bosses of furred and beaming green?

How can one describe the starred divisions of rubied bloom?

Those divisions are fine-filmed.

The Rock Spirits could spin porphyry.

So we spin glass.

How can one describe the traceries of intricate silver and fringes of amber, lustrous, arborescent?

The fringes and traceries are burnished through every fiber into fitful brightness and glossy traverses of silken change.

Yet they are all subdued and pensive and framed for the simplest, sweetest offices of grace.

19. ab.

Do the shoals of fish flee from the giant swordfish or the ravening sawfish or the herds of porpoises or the grande-ecaille?

The grande-ecaille is a splendid monster.

No net can hold it.

It is all helmeted and armored with argent plate-mail.

20. a-abb.

The mountain shadows lie clear and cool along the ascending slopes.

The valley drowns the day through.

The shadows grow longer.

They cross the valley brook.

They creep up the far eastern slopes.

The sun sinks down beyond the mountain peaks.

21. abbb.

Usually a small river or brook winds its way down larger valleys.

It cuts out the soft deposits of earth.

It forms banks or cliffs on either side.

There vines clamber.

There stunted pines cling in the fissures of the rock.

There small trickling streams drip from under thick carpetings of moss.

22. a.

A valley stream is usually a noisy, swift-running stream.

It dashes its way seaward over shelves of stone and gravel.

It winds in and out of deep pools.

It swirls around sharp bends in eddies and circles.

23. abbb.

The tributaries of valley streams are the little cold water rivulets.

They come down the side gulches.

They spring over ledges.

They bubble into basins.

In the rivulets, the young trout splash in their leaps.

To them the stealthy-footed inhabitants of the wood come to drink.

24. abbbb.

In October a strange feeling comes over me.

I am looking at the valley.

The autumn leaf is rustling.

The rain begins to fall.

The bright days of the valley are numbered.

It will soon be sleeping under ice and snow.

Its protecting mountains will look dark and grim through the long nights of winter.

25. abcc.

The Montana table-lands are full of abrupt breaks.
Here and there are sawed-off mountains.
These mountains are succeeded by flat basins.
There the buffalo once grazed in countless numbers.
There even to-day one may see the sheeny coat of an antelope.
It glistens in the sun.

26. a.

The eastern portion of Montana borders on Dakota.
It shows its cliffs, buttes and gravel beds.
It is a land once shaken by volcanic convulsion.
It was water-swept by flood and glacier.

27. abbc.

I have seen ordinary marsh flags.
A low summer sun was behind them.
Cathedral glass is transparent.
Every blade looked transparent.
Every leaf-edge was showing the colors of the rainbow.

28. ab.

It was under the morning sun.
The wind was blowing over the marsh flags.
I have seen them glittering.
Bayonets of a regiment on parade throw light from their polished surfaces.
The flags threw light thus.

29. a.

It was in midwinter.
I have seen these same commonplace flags.
They stood yellow as gold above the snows.
Every stem cast a bright blue shadow.
The scene was one of marsh, sky, and snow.
The whole showed a perfect harmony of color, in yellow, blue, and white.

30. abbbbbbcbdb.

These ocean marshes are seen in the summer.
Then they are luxuriant in their greens.
The flag is in blossom.
The young cat-tails nod in the breeze.
They are seen in the fall.
Then nature is dying.

The weeds are day by day shifting the rough green to gold.
The trees are gorgeous with autumn tints.
The orange stain of the short grass is gathering.
It is growing.
It is weaving itself into a brilliant carpet.
The snow falls.
The colors of the carpet do not fade till then.
The marshes are a pestilent congregation of vapors.
Fancy pictures them thus.
They are (under all these conditions) far from it.

31. a-a.

The lakes look like the shore regions near Chesapeake Bay.
Flags surround them.
They are in the low, flat places.
They are on either side of the river.
More often the river bottom is a vast jungle of trees, vines and dense undergrowth.
It is not unlike the Dismal Swamp of Virginia.

32. a.

The shore of Great Island is a wilderness of wind-swept grasses and sinewy weeds.
They wave away from their beach.
The beach is ever speckled with a drift of worm-riddled timbers and dead porpoises.

33. a.

In the forest of oak and chestnut the sunlight breaks through in splashes.
There the creeper grows.
There the cardinal flower gleams.
The long aisles and open spaces in the forests of oak and chestnut contrast strangely with the dark depths of the pinery.
The closed-up ranks of the trees shut out the light of the sun.
The long moss hangs in festoons from the branches.
Only stray patches of the lowly pink peer through the carpet of pine needles.

34. a-abb.

The open woods are the most enjoyable, the most lovable spots.
How sublime in their power and volume are the great interlaced forests!
The light filters through only in arrowy shafts.

The bear and the wolf slink like specters.
The deer breaks suddenly from his bed.

35. a.

The spruce is a straight-trunked tree.
It throws out branches.
The branches ride upward like crescents.
They bear needles.
The needles hang downward like fringes.

36. ab-ab.

The leafy trees in groves or forests have a sound.
It is like the sound of a distant waterfall or fast-driven rain.
Anyone stands on a mountain top.
He hears a storm coming down the valley.
Wherein does the roar of a storm consist?
He knows this.

37. a-a.

The night winds are gentle breezes.
They stir the leaves.
They set the whole wood whispering.
They are great creators of sentiment.
Possibly this is because of their gentleness.

38. ab-a-a.

The iron-like trunks show a variety of darks.
To the casual observer they are all of one tone.
The twigs bunch together along the tops of the trees.
They seem like a bordering fringe.
The cedar keeps its leaves in spite of any storm.
The dull-green of the cedar is merely a color-spot in the line.

39. a-a-a.

After the first few warm days of spring, the buds on the trees
swell.

They open just a little.

A fuzziness muffles the sharp outlines of the branches.

The next color-note is a mist of pale yellow.

The pale yellow is mingled with the pinks, grays and whites of the
buds, and the reds and yellows of the stems.

40. a-ab.

A fortnight or more and the gorgeous leaves of the hills shall have
been torn by the storms.

They will be flying with the winds.

They will be heaping in fence-corners and about bushes for the long, long sleep of decay.

The flame-like mantle of autumn leaves lasts.

How supremely glorious its coloring!

41. **abb.**

It is in the coal regions of Pennsylvania.

The timber has been destroyed.

Many of the valleys have been turned into mere sluices and drainways for the black waters of the coal mines.

The laurel and the rhododendron grow in great profusion.

They cover valley, hill and mountain for miles at a stretch.

42. **ab.**

A clump of hazel may be a wonder-world of beauty.

We study it in its form and color, its setting, light and relation to the whole meadow.

The daisies grow around it.

The blackberry twines its white blossoms through it.

43. **ab-ab.**

Nature would spare effort in finishing the forms with nicety.

In these varied forms of mosses this might be thought so.

The mosses are tucked away under rock bases.

They are bunched about the roots of the great pines.

They are hidden under thick brush.

Every hair-root, every stem, is wrought with skill and beauty.

The skill and beauty of its working would fit the moss to cover a royal throne.

44. **ab.**

The Mississippi passed over a sandstone crust.

It cut through the crust.

It has sunk its bed five hundred feet or more below the surface of the prairies.

The banks of the upper river are now fringed by high bluffs.

45. **a-a-ab-a.**

The hills near at hand are bright green.

They recede from us.

They grow bluer.

The valley shadows grow paler.

Oftentimes in clear weather one can see far away the faint gray silhouette of the high mountain ridge.

The mountain ridge is beyond the timber-crowned slopes of the foothills.

It is almost lost in the blue of the sky.

46. a-ab.

A great expanse of country looks like a map.

It is seen in the vista from a mountain height or a river bluff.

Life upon such heights is dreary.

I cannot imagine a drearier life.

One strains his eyes and imagination over the lines of a valley.

There farms, towns, lakes, woodlands are dotted.

47. abbcc.

The view of mountains from the plain expands peak on peak.

The topmost pine is reached.

One stands on the top.

He looks over the snow fields.

He looks down gorges and glaciers into the valley.

The view from the mountain-top is complete.

The view from the plain is more complete.

48. ab.

The mountains and ridges are but a few thousand feet high.

They have no snow belts.

They are not so impressive in their sense of loftiness.

The Alps and Andes are beautiful to the eye.

These mountains are, perhaps, more so.

49. a.

Everywhere among the lower hills the eye meets the sweeping lines of ridge and promontory or the billowy roll of descending lines.

The lines of ridge and promontory trail along the sky.

The descending lines flow down by terraces into the valleys.

50. a.

Have you seen the mountains at sunrise?

They lie off in the west.

The light is on them instead of behind them.

Each barren crag is a gleaming star.

The pine forest on the ridge is pale and blue.

The network of interblended lines is woven faint and fleecy against the dark ground of the half-awakened sky.

PART IV

SYNOPSSES OF SELECTIONS

1.—BAUCIS AND PHILEMON

- a Jupiter and Mercury found no hospitality in all Phrygia save in the humble cot of Baucis and Philemon.
1) inhospitable; 2) to rouse; 3) humble mansion; 4) to thatch.
- b The two old people entertained their guests with simple fare.
1) threshold; 2) to bustle; 3) to rake; 4) to feed a fire; 5) pot-herb; 6) to shred.
- c Recognizing their heavenly guests, they were prevented by the latter from sacrificing all they had in their honor, and were bidden to accompany the gods.
1) repast; 2) to replenish; 3) to clasp; 4) guardian; 5) to pay the penalty.
- d From the top of the hill they saw the surrounding country changed into a lake and their cottage into a temple, and were asked by the two gods to speak their desires.
1) staff; 2) to labor; 3) stone's throw; 4) thatch; 5) to gild; 6) carving.
- e After consulting with his wife, Philemon asked that they should be guardians of the temple and die together.
1) to take counsel; 2) guardian.
- f Their wish was granted, and they were at last changed into trees, which the shepherds still show.
1) keeper; 2) edifice; 3) to put forth; 4) leafy crown; 5) bark.

2.—MIDAS

- a When Bacchus asked Midas what reward he desired for the care of Silenus, Midas asked, and obtained, the golden touch.
1) foster-father; 2) Silenus; 3) peasant; 4) jollity; 5) hospitality.

- b Midas put his gift to the test, and was not altogether rejoiced.
 1) to put to the test; 2) to pluck; 3) sod; 4) Hesperides; 5) to defy.
- c At his prayer, Bacchus told him he would find relief in the river Pactolus.
 1) to divest; 2) glittering destruction; 3) fountain-head.
- d The river relieved him.
 1) scarce; 2) sands.

3.—PROSERPINE

- a Pluto, falling in love with Proserpine, carried her down into Tartarus.
 1) Enna; 2) to embower; 3) to screen; 4) iron-colored; 5) Cyane; 6) trident.
- b After long and continuous search, Ceres, finding the girdle of Proserpine, laid the blame for her disappearance on the earth.
 1) Aurora; 2) Hesperus; 3) to lead out; 4) girdle; 5) to waft; 6) to endow; 7) herbage.
- c Arethusa, seeing the distress Ceres sent on earth, proclaimed the innocence of the land.
 1) cattle; 2) furrow; 3) thistle; 4) bramble.
- d The fountain told where Proserpine was.
 1) underground; 2) region; 3) bride.
- e As Proserpine had taken food in Tartarus, all that Ceres could obtain from Jove was that she should live half the year with Pluto and half with her mother.
 1) chariot; 2) bereavement; 3) Mercury; 4) wily; 5) pomegranate; 6) pulp; 7) compromise.

4.—THE DRAGON'S TEETH

- a Cadmus, searching for his sister in Panope, lost his servants by the dragon.
 1) Jupiter; 2) to profane; 3) arch; 4) crested; 5) to glitter; 6) venom; 7) to vibrate; 8) libation.
- b Cadmus, seeing the dead bodies, swore aloud to avenge them.
 1) in search; 2) bloody.

- c After wounding it with a stone and his javelin, he succeeded in fixing the dragon to a tree with his spear.
1) fortress; 2) javelin; 3) to meet with success; 4) scales; 5) to rankle; 6) to swell; 7) bloody foam; 8) trunk.
- d As soon as Cadmus had sown the dragon's teeth, he was frightened by the sight of the armed men, who warned him not to meddle with them.
1) to sow; 2) clod; 3) nodding plume; 4) harvest of warriors; 5) to meddle.
- e They fought till only five remained, and these, concluding to live in peace, helped Cadmus build Thebes.
1) to smite; 2) to pierce; 3) mutual.

5.—THE STORY OF THE SPIDER

- a Arachne was so skillful in weaving and embroidering that she boasted herself superior even to Minerva.
1) nymph; 2) to card; 3) cloud; 4) to twirl; 5) spindle; 6) pupil.
- b (C) Minerva in the form of an old woman advised Arachne to ask pardon of the goddess.
1) assume; 2) counsel; 3) challenge.
- c (C) Arachne bade Minerva come, and the goddess discovered herself.
1) hand in hand; 2) to stand to anything; 3) to stand confessed.
- d Minerva and Arachne entered the contest, each weaving scenes calculated to humble the other.
1) to stand one's ground; 2) conceit; 3) to rush on fate; 4) shuttle; 5) reed; 6) to compact; 7) presumptuous.
- e After rending the web of Arachne, Minerva shamed her into hanging herself, and made that her fate forever.
1) to forbear; 2) to rend; 3) to endure; 4) guilty.
- f She turned her into a spider.
1) juice; 2) aconite; 3) to cleave; 4) to spin.

6.—AN ANCIENT FLYING MACHINE

- a Daedalus, after many services to King Minos, being confined on an island, whence there was no escape by land or water, determined to try the air.
1) labyrinth; 2) to lose favor; 3) to control.
- b He constructed wings, and his son Icarus assisted him.
1) to fabricate; 2) to secure; 3) curvature.
- c Daedalus tried his wings, and taught Icarus, instructing the latter what to avoid.
1) to wave; 2) to buoy upward; 3) to poise; 4) to tempt; 5) nest; 6) to clog.
- d To the amazement of all beholders, they flew away, Daedalus in the lead and encouraging Icarus.
1) to fit; 2) wet; 3) flight; 4) plowman; 5) shepherd; 6) to cleave.
- e After commencing the journey well, Icarus melted the wax on his wings, and sank into the waves deaf to the cries of his father.
1) Samos; 2) Delos; 3) Lebynthos; 4) to soar; 5) to soften; 6) to flutter; 7) wildly.
- f Daedalus buried the body of Icarus in Icaria, and himself arrived safe in Sicily.
1) to float; 2) to lament; 3) Apollo.

7.—ERISICHTHON

- a Erisichthon, despiser of the gods, to the horror of all the bystanders began to chop down a tree in the grove of Ceres, when the nymph of the tree warned him of approaching vengeance.
1) to violate; 2) votive garland; 3) Dryad; 4) cubit; 5) groan; 6) blood; 7) to turn anything on a person.
- b Still the tree was brought down.
1) to sunder; 2) crash; 3) to prostrate.
- c At the prayer of the Dryads, Ceres sent an Oread to summon Famine to punish Erisichthon.
1) clad; 2) mourning; 3) to nod assent; 4) ice-clad Scythia; 5) to prey on.

- d The Oread found *Famine*, and delivered the message of *Ceres*.
1) dragon; 2) stony; 3) claw; 4) scanty; 5) to blanch; 6) tight.
- e *Erisichthon*, touched by *Famine*, sold all, even his daughter, for food, and died, devouring himself.
1) guilty; 2) poison; 3) to crave; 4) unabated; 5) to sate; 6) base.

8.—THE POWER OF MUSIC

- a *Orpheus* charmed with his lyre not only men, but even beasts and trees and rocks.
1) to withstand; 2) to lay by; 3) to entrance; 4) to crowd; 5) to relax.
- b *Orpheus* won the liberation of *Eurydice* from *Tartarus*, but lost her again by looking back.
1) to tread; 2) *Stygian*; 3) to charm; 4) *Pluto*; 5) *Proserpine*; 6) to limp; 7) outlet.
- c Singing his grief to nature, he incensed the *Thracians* by dwelling aloof, and they, shouting to drown the charm of his music, slew him, but the *Muses* and *Jupiter* honored him.
1) *Styx*; 2) *Hades*; 3) *Erebus*; 4) to melt; 5) aloof; 6) limb from limb; 7) *Hebrus*; 8) to murmur; 9) to give back; 10) plaintive; 11) *Libethra*; 12) *Tartarus*.

9.—COSTLY GIFTS

- a *Badi-al-Zaman*, reading the messages under the bird's wings, bought it willingly, and sent it to the fowler's wife to be cooked.
1) *Bagdad*; 2) fowler; 3) piece.
- b The explanations of the fowler's wife did not mollify *Badi* when he found the desired parts missing.
1) cottage; 2) to steam; 3) to discover; 4) to tease; 5) to mollify; 6) to vow.
- c The fowler and his wife, for good reasons, dismissed their children, and hid themselves.
1) wrath; 2) harm's way; 3) fortune.
- d The younger son spent so freely of his wealth that he was soon killed.
1) yellow; 2) reckless; 3) hoard.

- e The elder brother was by a strange accident chosen emir of a distant city.
1) adventure; 2) to prolong; 3) to stare; 4) at his heels.
- f The city revolted, and killed the emir.
1) knack; 2) revolt.
- g Thus were the gifts of the yellow bird paid for.
1) prime.

10.—THE FATE OF CUNNING

- a Blacky rolled down the hill in his kettle, and escaped into his house, just as the fox appeared on the top of the hill.
1) marketing; 2) to sling; 3) to nestle; 4) to coil; 5) snug; 6) foreleg; 7) full tilt; 8) great pace; 9) to bar; 10) to bolt; 11) shutter.
- b The fox, confident of success, came down the hill to examine the house.
1) to escape; 2) stealthily; 3) to prowl; 4) to climb.
- c Blacky set the kettle to boil, and the fox dropped into it.
1) to sing; 2) steam; 3) to muffle; 4) patter; 5) paw; 6) chimney; 7) yelp; 8) to pop.

11.—AS DEAR AS SALT

- a The king was told by his two daughters how much they loved him.
1) apple; 2) salt.
- b Being sent from the court, the princess put on beggar's rags, and was sent by a farmer's wife to watch geese.
1) to quit; 2) housewife; 3) soft.
- c A prince, seeing her in her robes of state, wooed and won her, subject to her father's consent.
1) splendor; 2) impetuously; 3) suit; 4) suitor.
- d The repentant father came with his elder daughter to the ceremony.
1) to repent; 2) harshness; 3) to ask in marriage.
- e The daughter called her father's attention to the value of salt when she saw his expression, and heard his complaint.
1) seasoning; 2) to make faces; 3) tasteless; 4) slightly.
- f The king acknowledged his mistake, and was given seasoned dishes.
1) to embrace; 2) to misinterpret.

12.—JORINDE AND JORINGEL

- a An old witch, who had the habit of doing such things, changed Jorinde into a nightingale, while she was walking with Joringel.
1) betrothed; 2) malignant; 3) cage; 4) to be beside one's self;
5) crone; 6) to keep rooted; 7) to cast a spell.
- b Living miserably in a strange village, he dreamt of a strange flower.
1) to drag along; 2) blood-red flower; 3) pearl; 4) enchantment.
- c He found the flower, and gained entrance to the castle.
1) mountain; 2) dew-drop; 3) pace; 4) courtyard.
- d He released Jorinde and the other imprisoned maidens.
1) enchantress; 2) wicker; 3) gall.

13.—SPINDLE, SHUTTLE AND NEEDLE

- a The king's son rode, looking for a bride.
1) tour.
- b He asked for the richest and the poorest.
1) village; 2) cottage.
- c The rich girl tried her charms on him.
1) to dress in one's best; 2) courtesy.
- d The prince peeped in at the poor girl at work.
1) to rein in; 2) to spin.
- e The girl took a fancy to him.
1) to blush; 2) lattice; 3) plume.
- f She sang to her spindle.
1) spindle.
- g She watched the spindle dancing through the fields.
1) merrily; 2) golden; 3) to be lost to sight.
- h The girl wove, and the spindle reached the king's son.
1) shuttle; 2) loom.
- i The prince followed back the golden thread.
- j At the song of the girl, the shuttle wove a beautiful carpet.
1) threshold; 2) thicket; 3) to bloom; 4) topmost; 5) plumage.

- k At the song of the girl, the needle decorated the room.
1) lightning; 2) velvet; 3) curtain; 4) stitch.
- l The prince entered, saluted the girl, and led her away his bride.
1) to dismount; 2) palace.

14.—THE DRAGON OF THE NORTH

- a Many had tried, but in vain, to slay the terrible, devastating dragon of the North.
1) monster; 2) tract; 3) fathom; 4) scale; 5) to bewitch.
- b The great virtue of Solomon's ring, which was essential for the destruction of the dragon, was that it could hide and strengthen its wearer.
1) signet; 2) rare; 3) invisible; 4) incredible.
- c The young man made his preparations.
1) magician; 2) iron; 3) to wield; 4) stake.
- d The jaws of the monster were transfixed by the mighty spear, and his head crushed by a great stone.
1) frontier; 2) to push; 3) to swallow; 4) to run cold; 5) clap;
6) peg; 7) writhing; 8) earthquake; 9) lifeless.
- e The youth was rewarded richly.
1) to ennoble; 2) to wed.

15.—THE SEVEN-HEADED SERPENT

- a A Grecian kingdom had to pay a yearly tribute of youths and maidens to the seven-headed serpent, when one day the king was addressed by his horse.
1) tribute; 2) to devour.
- b (C) "I will show you a way out of this destructive tribute."
1) to mount; 2) enchantress.
- c The old woman of the mountain, at his prayer, taught the youth how to destroy the serpent.
1) hollow; 2) cavern; 3) to spin; 4) to entreat; 5) to instruct.

- d When the youth had gotten into the palace of the serpent, which was asleep, and had stuffed all the telltale bells, he cut off the heads of the monster one by one.
1) cotton; 2) to hang round; 3) flash; 4) to grin.
- e The young king returned home.
1) mission; 2) to greet.

16.—GRATITUDE

- a Ferko, a kind-hearted youth, once repaired the wing of a bee.
1) sterling; 2) to trail; 3) to tear; 4) ingenious; 5) profusely.
- b Happening into a kingdom where he had enemies, his death was put off only on very hard conditions.
1) to happen; 2) responsible; 3) score; 4) emissary; 5) to protest; 6) palace.
- c As Ferko wandered downcast about the meadows, the bee, whose wing he had repaired, asked him how she could help him.
1) heart-broken; 2) disconsolately; 3) to settle; 4) benefactor.
- d The bee gave him assurance of help, and on the third day told him the palace was finished.
1) cheerily; 2) cheer.
- e Ferko led the king and his court out to see a palace built entirely of flowers.
1) to rear; 2) exquisite; 3) mortal; 4) to tile; 5) mosaic; 6) auricula; 7) to inlay; 8) knocker; 9) vaulted; 10) perfume; 11) to enchant.
- f Ferko refused the king's proffers of preferment, and left the kingdom gladly, resolved on one thing—ever to be kind.
1) amazement; 2) to dream.

17.—A LITTLE KINDNESS

- a The giant, whose groans he had heard, assured the boy he would do him no harm.
1) herd-boy; 2) dismay; 3) handsomely.
- b The boy took courage to bind up the giant's foot and to follow him.
1) shirt; 2) to limp.

- c After a great feast in his underground hall, the giant gave the boy a loaf to eat when he felt hungry.
1) golden; 2) viand; 3) profusion; 4) to fall to; 5) lustily; 6) to stow away; 7) tunic.
- d The boy grew rich so fast that many came to him to get the prescription.
1) loaf; 2) to roll; 3) by dint.

18.—THE GLASS MOUNTAIN

- a Many an adventurer had lost his life in an attempt to gain a golden apple and admission to the castle of the rich princess.
1) glass; 2) silver; 3) ravine; 4) to grin.
- b A schoolboy prepared himself for the attempt.
1) mere; 2) 'ynx; 3) claw.
- c Half-way up the mountain he was exhausted.
1) to parch; 2) cloud; 3) to moisten.
- d He fell asleep, clinging to the side of the mountain.
1) pitch; 2) to glue; 3) to slumber.
- e The eagle that guarded the apple tree swooped down on him and found him awake.
1) lookout; 2) to emerge; 3) to circle; 4) carrion; 5) to swoop.
- f Clinging to the feet of the eagle, he was borne over the castle wall, and then he dropped into the apple tree.
1) to dig; 2) to glitter; 3) lamp; 4) balcony; 5) broad.
- g After healing his wounds, he used the charm of a golden apple to gain admission to the castle and the princess.
1) peel; 2) dragon; 3) retinue.
- h The youth remained on the mountain with his wife and his riches.
1) to greet; 2) to enjoy.

19.—THE BROKEN PROMISE

- a The Indian father died in peace, thinking his child provided for.
1) deep; 2) motherless; 3) to exact; 4) to forsake.
- b In the spring the elder brother, despite the sister's protest, left them.
1) thick; 2) to stir; 3) wigwam; 4) hut.

- c The next spring the sister left the little boy.
1) to melt; 2) hard; 3) burden; 4) shelter.
- d She did not return.
1) journeying; 2) brave; 3) husband.
- e The little boy grew to live on roots and to accompany the wolves to their feasts.
1) berry; 2) root; 3) fill; 4) to howl; 5) prey.
- f The elder brother one day heard the younger singing a wolf song on the shores of the lake, but the younger ran away at the approach of the elder.
1) to go down; 2) canoe; 3) to sink; 4) skin; 5) depth.
- g The brother and sister mourned till death the broken promise.
1) anguish; 2) to mourn.

20.—THE DEAD WIFE

- a An Indian widower dressed a doll in his wife's clothes to console himself for her loss.
1) forest; 2) wooden; 3) to brush off.
- b After several mysterious visits, he one day found his wife in his cabin—as she said—by the permission of the Great Spirit.
1) fire; 2) kettle; 3) to mystify; 4) shoulder; 5) to touch.
- c On the way to the tribe he touched her, and she fell into the fire,—a wooden doll.
1) to make haste; 2) string; 3) to set about; 4) to brush against.
- d The tribe found that the unhappy man had spoken the truth.
1) misery; 2) to weigh down.

21.—IN THE LAND OF SOULS

- a After two moons of grief for his young wife, the sachem remembered how he might recover her.
1) sachem; 2) elder; 3) far; 4) moon.
- b An old man, standing on a mountain, told him he must leave his body behind in order to enter the land of souls.
1) cliff; 2) distance; 3) yonder; 4) safely.

- c He passed through a beautiful land of shadows.
1) air; 2) scent; 3) to rub noses; 4) to circle; 5) to bar.
- d He came to the lake and the stone canoe.
1) winged; 2) lovely; 3) to glitter; 4) paddle.
- e His wife followed him, and both of them, for their innocence, were allowed to enter and remain in the happy land till the Master of Life spoke to him.
1) to push off; 2) to sink; 3) bone; 4) flowery; 5) murmur.
- f (C) "Return to do good for your people and you will rejoin your wife later."
1) messenger; 2) patience.

22.—A STORY OF KING FROST

- a The father took the stepdaughter out into the cold fields.
1) peasant; 2) to humor; 3) to pamper; 4) to do for one; 5) scold.
- b King Frost presented himself to the weeping girl.
1) to spring; 2) to crack; 3) fir; 4) crisp; 5) to crackle; 6) red nose.
- c Despite her inconvenience she was polite to the old man, and he rewarded her.
1) bluff; 2) to chatter; 3) courteous; 4) to pierce; 5) sledge.
- d When the stepmother saw the presents, she sent her husband with her daughter to the same place.
1) wicked; 2) to creak; 3) to fly open; 4) radiant; 5) to glitter; 6) to dazzle; 7) to yoke.
- e King Frost froze to death the impolite daughter.
1) amiable; 2) rude; 3) to gnash.
- f The impatient mother received into her arms the frozen body, and was herself chilled to death.
1) direction; 2) to upset; 3) to chill.

23.—THE DEATH OF THE SUN-HERO

- a The son of a certain king was such a wonderful lad that all the people called him the sun-hero.
1) clever; 2) counselor; 3) to sparkle; 4) wind.

- b When he had found the tree of the sun and grasped for one of its golden apples, he heard the girl in red laughing behind him.
1) to pluck; 2) wizard; 3) definite; 4) whereabouts; 5) to put out; 6) tip-toe; 7) to recede; 8) personage.
- c (C) "To get an apple, you must guard the tree, and you must die if you fail."
1) ravage; 2) wolf.
- d The hero went to his post.
1) to frighten.
- e Not till the eighth day did he fall asleep at his post.
1) to beat off; 2) eye; 3) to fail.
- f (C) "I, mother of the sun, condemn you to death for your vanity."
1) black; 2) to pronounce sentence.
- g His mother's word, that the one thing which could hurt him was unknown to the sun, consoled him.
1) to strike down; 2) gayety; 3) sunshine.
- h When he was bitten by the deadly crab, the black woman appeared beside his deathbed to gloat over his punishment.
1) threat; 2) to go hunting; 3) crab; 4) fate; 5) to close in death.

24.—THE STORY OF A LONG NOSE

- a The wizard, for the fault of his father, doomed Prince Hyacinth to keep his long nose till he himself would find out his defect.
1) wizard; 2) to enrage; 3) proportion; 4) to make matters worse.
- b Owing to the flattery of the courtiers, the prince was in a fair way never to learn this.
1) vanity; 2) jealous; 3) to pull.
- c To the discomfiture of the courtiers, the prince chose a wife with a short nose, but the sly flatterers found an explanation.
1) at hand; 2) eligible; 3) to be hard put to it.
- d In every town on the way to his princess his nose was jeered at.
1) consolation; 2) to go forth; 3) hubbub; 4) to jeer; 5) comment.
- e The youth confided his woes to his fairy godmother, and the old lady saw her chance to cure his vanity.
1) chagrin; 2) charm; 3) beak; 4) to prove too much.

- f When he saw the princess, imprisoned by the old dame, and found he could neither free her nor kiss her hand for his long nose, he acknowledged the ugliness of the member.
1) crystal; 2) to fall to work; 3) utterly; 4) proboscis.
- g While he was rejoicing in the good effects of his confession, the fairy preached him a sermon on vanity.
1) splinter; 2) to blind; 3) to get in the way.

25.—RUMPELSTILTSKIN

- a On account of her father's boasting, the king told the maiden she must die or spin the straw into gold.
1) unfortunate; 2) to comfort.
- b A little man for a slight present spun all the straw into gold.
1) necklace; 2) whirl; 3) bobbin.
- c The second day the same thing happened to the king, the girl and the little man.
1) greedy; 2) to lust after; 3) to come to the help of.
- d The third day the king promised the girl to make her his queen, if she repeated her performance, and she promised the little man her first child, if he would help her; all of which fell out.
1) to weep; 2) fulfillment; 3) manikin.
- e The little man agreed to waive his right to the child, if in three days the queen learnt his name.
1) to demand; 2) to beg; 3) to waive.
- f The first and second day the queen got no information from her messengers.
1) to ponder; 2) to come across.
- g The third day one of the messengers told her of the strange song of a little man in the country.
1) grotesque; 2) to hop; 3) to brew; 4) dame; 5) to deem.
- h The little man was so enraged when the queen called him by name that he tore himself in two.
1) to enrage; 2) to scream; 3) to drive; 4) waist; 4) to tear.

26.—WHY THE SEA IS SALT

- a The mill would grind at its owner's command, but would not stop unless its owner knew how to make it.
1) hand-mill; 2) marvel; 3) to cease.
- b One purchaser was almost drowned in herrings and porridge because he did not know how to stop the mill.
1) characteristic; 2) fat; 3) to flood; 4) kitchen; 5) parlor; 6) neck-high; 7) tide; 8) shrewdly.
- c A skipper paid a goodly price for it in order to be saved long voyages after salt.
1) fame; 2) abroad; 3) foreign; 4) freight; 5) to part.
- d The skipper in his hurry to get away with the prize did not ask how to stop the mill.
1) to loiter; 2) to change.
- e The skipper bade the mill grind.
1) deck.
- f The ship was sunk and the mill grinds on.
1) to spout; 2) water; 3) bottom.

27.—THE TERRIBLE HEAD

- a Of the three dreadful sisters whose look was mortal, only the youngest could be killed.
1) ogreish; 2) claw; 3) serpent.
- b Thinking the prince who stood in the way of his suit would be killed by the ogress, he sent the boy to cut off her head.
1) widowed; 2) hand; 3) outright; 4) unknown; 5) ogress.
- c A young man equipped the boy.
1) to fly; 2) invisible; 3) to cleave.
- d When he came upon the sisters, he walked backwards, and cutting off the head, fled, invisible to his pursuers.
1) bank; 2) poplar; 3) claw; 4) to writhe out; 5) to contrive; 6) mirror; 7) wallet.

e He met the king pursuing his mother with murderous intent, and presented to him the head.

1) incredibly; 2) to fly for one's life; 3) naked; 4) to catch on a shield.

f The king became a stone.

1) to fall on; 2) to lift.

28.—THE VALUE OF A CAT

a Mr. Fitzwarren insisted that Dick Whittington should send his cat to be sold on the voyage.

1) outcast; 2) scullion; 3) to venture; 4) factor; 5) profit; 6) to abound; 7) garret.

b Driven by storms on the coasts of Barbary, they learned that the viands were regularly carried off the king's table by rats, and that the natives knew no relief.

1) course; 2) to set down; 3) disgust; 4) horde; 5) very; 6) pest.

c The king called for the creature that would destroy the rats.

1) vermin; 2) to destroy.

d The cat did such execution that the king bought the cargo, and paid ten times as much for the cat as for the cargo.

1) midst; 2) rodent; 3) slaughter; 4) cargo; 5) to strike a bargain.

e Whittington was surprised to find he was one of the richest men of London.

1) to hurry; 2) fortune; 3) counting-house; 4) ragged; 5) to mock; 6) sometime.

f He proved himself worthy of his fortune.

1) sheriff; 2) Lord Mayor; 3) Henry V.

29.—ST. FRANCIS AND THE BIRDS

a Francis left his companions to preach to the birds.

1) to lift up; 2) hard by; 3) well-nigh; 4) to preach.

b He went among them, and they stayed for his blessing.

1) field; 2) to make an end; 3) Masseo; 4) Jaques da Massa; 5) to touch.

- c (C) "Be grateful to God, who has done so much for you."
1) to be bound; 2) liberty; 3) raiment; 4) Noah; 5) refuge; 6) nest;
7) to clothe.
- d The birds heard him reverently, and Francis blessed them, sending them to the quarters of the world as his brothers were sent.
1) beak; 2) to marvel; 3) leave; 4) flight; 5) pattern.

30.—THE WOLF OF AGOBIO

- a In the time of St. Francis a great wolf had all Agobio in terror.
1) to abide; 2) to array; 3) to come to a pass; 4) to dare.
- b Despite the fear of the townsfolk, Francis went out to meet the wolf, and as the animal leaped at him, made the sign of the cross over him and addressed him.
1) to give counsel; 2) to put trust in anything; 3) townsfolk; 4) to make at one; 5) to bespeak.
- c The wolf stopped, and Francis spoke kindly to him.
1) to stay; 2) to lay down; 3) gibbet; 4) fain.
- d The wolf raised his right paw, and pledged himself to do as the Saint willed.
1) to abide; 2) to plight troth; 3) to take pledge.
- e The wolf lived for two years like a tame beast in Agobio, and then died to the sorrow of the people.
1) tame; 2) courteously; 3) to bark; 4) sorely.

31.—ST. ANTONY AND THE FISHES

- a By the inspiration of God, who wished to reprove stiff-necked men, Antony, after attempting the conversion of the heretics of Rimini in vain, preached to the fishes.
1) to reprove; 2) folly; 3) Balaam; 4) stiff-necked.
- b The fishes, great and small, arranged themselves in order to hear the Saint.
1) multitude; 2) anigh; 3) order.

- c When the fish were seen gathering to hear the Saint, even the heretics came out to hear his words.
1) array; 2) aforesaid; 3) to behold.
- d Thereupon Antony converted the heretics, and sent away the fishes with his blessing.
1) nobly; 2) exceeding great; 3) to reap.

32.—SIR RODOLPH OF HAPSBURG

- a Gallant Rodolph of Hapsburg, wise in council and brave in war, had outstripped his train, and raised his bugle to call them on.
1) hunter; 2) frosty; 3) Alpine; 4) chase; 5) reverent; 6) needless; 7) loiterer.
- b He heard a bell, and knelt at the approach of the Sacrament.
1) silvery; 2) to dismount; 3) humbly; 4) plain.
- c (C) "I insist, Father, that my Lord ride."
1) to whisper; 2) steed; 3) page; 4) alone; 5) foul.
- d The priest did as Rodolph willed.
1) rein in hand; 2) to bend; 3) reverent; 4) rocky; 5) company.
- e Rodolph insisted on giving the horse to the priest.
1) pass; 2) to check; 3) pathway.
- f The priest prophesied Rodolph's greatness.
1) benediction; 2) to gaze; 3) to reward.
- g After nine years Rodolph was made king.
1) to roll by; 2) stalwart; 3) peer; 4) serf; 5) accord.

33.—THE MUSIC OF HEAVEN

- a Dr. Grant was asked if he would not tire of the music of heaven.
1) Southwark; 2) familiarity; 3) to foster; 4) to tire.
- b The Bishop told her a legend.
1) skeptic; 2) puzzle.
- c A monk, tired with labor, thought Paradise not worth the trouble.
1) to flag; 2) to bethink; 3) toil.

- d He followed the bird into the midst of the forest, and came home after a long ramble.
1) to thrill; 2) to perch; 3) to flutter; 4) rich; 5) gush; 6) spell;
7) warbler; 8) heart; 9) ramble.
- e He found the monastery strangely changed, and was greeted as a ghost.
1) to befall; 2) ivy; 3) lichen; 4) moss; 5) to drape; 6) summons;
7) porter; 8) hundred.
- f He broke out into exclamations of wonder, and knew that his doubt had been answered.
1) scarcely; 2) wanderer.

34.—ST. GEORGE AND THE DRAGON

- a The people of Selene, after exhausting all their flocks, were obliged to sacrifice their children to the dragon.
1) legion; 2) Libya; 3) consternation; 4) ravage; 5) marsh;
6) refuge; 7) lot.
- b The people were so angered at the king's attempt to save his daughter Cleodolinde that he was obliged to yield up the maiden, who offered herself a willing victim.
1) to redeem; 2) edict; 3) to wax; 4) wroth; 5) to bewail.
- c She refused the services of St. George.
1) dwelling; 2) drearily; 3) to strew; 4) bone; 5) to tarry.
- d St. George, relying on the power of Christ, insisted.
1) loathly.
- e While the princess trembled with fear, he pinned the monster to the ground.
1) lair; 2) to crawl; 3) to spur toward; 4) to pin.
- f The princess led the bound dragon by her girdle.
1) girdle; 2) to subdue.
- g St. George promised to destroy the dragon on the conversion of the city.
1) guise; 2) adversary.
- h The people were converted, and St. George distributed his gifts to the poor.

35.—ST. CHRISTOPHER

- a Offero, discovering that his master feared the devil, set out to find the latter.
1) colossal; 2) bulk; 3) minstrel; 4) to cross.
- b He found Satan, and soon discovered that he feared Christ.
1) desert; 2) air; 3) trembling.
- c The hermit, finding he would not fast or pray, inquired if he knew a certain river.
1) hermit; 2) wild fellow; 3) stony; 4) to swell.
- d He sent him to work at the river.
1) strength; 2) to struggle; 3) to perish.
- e He never wearied of his task.
1) to root up; 2) to sink; 3) shoulder; 4) task; 5) to weary.
- f After carrying over the great burden, Christopher learned it was Christ.
1) to come to pass; 2) hut; 3) feeble; 4) edge; 5) staff; 6) to stay; 7) to totter; 8) burden.
- g The giant's heart was changed.
1) face; 2) to adore; 3) to work.

36.—THE LEGEND OF ST. CATHARINE

- a Catharine confronted the Emperor on the steps of the temple with the proofs of the Christian religion.
1) legend; 2) Egypt; 3) Alexandria; 4) torment; 5) heathen; 6) recess; 7) to sally; 8) to confront; 9) pagan.
- b The fifty philosophers and rhetoricians cried out to have the maiden brought before them.
1) to confound; 2) trivial; 3) folly; 4) rashness.
- c Catharine converted her opponents, and encouraged them to martyrdom.
1) feebleness; 2) sage; 3) to quote; 4) Plato; 5) Sibyl; 6) to confound; 7) to account; 8) crown.

d Catharine was put to death by the sword, and her body was carried to Mt. Sinai.

- 1) dungeon; 2) Maximin; 3) empress; 4) wheel; 5) to behead;
6) Desert; 7) Red Sea; 8) summit.

37.—ST. SYLVESTER AND CONSTANTINE

a It was, while Sylvester lay concealed from persecution at Mount Calvo, that Constantine was ordered to take the bath of blood which he finally refused.

- 1) virtuous; 2) cavern; 3) leprosy; 4) to bathe; 5) chariot; 6) to dishevel.

b The children were restored to their mothers.

- 1) recompense; 2) gratitude.

c Peter and Paul appeared to Constantine, and told him he would be cured by Sylvester, and should become a Christian.

- 1) bedside; 2) to spill; 3) counsel; 4) to lie hidden; 5) pool;
6) clean; 7) to cease.

d Constantine asked the prisoner, Sylvester, what gods had appeared to him.

- 1) cheerfully; 2) vision.

e Constantine, seeing from their pictures that Peter and Paul had appeared to him, was baptized and healed.

- 1) effigy; 2) possession; 3) dream; 4) font.

38.—THE CLOAK OF ST. MARTIN

a Martin was born of pagan parents, and as a catechumen excited the admiration of his comrades by his Christian virtues.

- 1) Constantine; 2) Saberia; 3) Pannonia; 4) tribune; 5) heathen;
6) catechumen; 7) to enroll; 8) cavalry; 9) license; 10) incompatible; 11) valiant.

b Meeting a poor beggar, he divided his cloak with him.

- 1) to quarter; 2) legion; 3) severity; 4) to shiver; 5) twain.

c Jesus, appearing in a vision to him, told the angels of his deed.

- 1) to bestow; 2) to array.

d Martin hastened to baptism.

39.—THE THEBAN LEGION

- a The Theban Legion was made up of Christians, and commanded by one.
1) Diocletian and Maximin; 2) to levy; 3) Thebaid; 4) valor; 5) Maurice.
- b The part of the Theban Legion left there refused to join in the games on the shores of the Lake of Geneva.
1) to reinforce; 2) Gaul; 3) passage; 4) Alps; 5) to withdraw; 6) idolatrous; 7) league; 8) to extirpate.
- c After they had been decimated twice for their Christian refusal, Maurice on the third summons spoke their sentiments.
1) to decimate; 2) lot; 3) to emulate.
- d (C) "We will fight for thee, Cæsar, but not against Christ."
1) pay; 2) life; 3) barbarian; 4) to renounce.
- e They went to slaughter meekly.
1) courage; 2) to hem round; 3) massacre; 4) resistance; 5) to resign; 6) sheep; 7) to trample; 8) hoof.
- f At Cologne and other places so many of the rest of the legion perished for the faith that it was called the glorious Theban Legion.
1) Gereon; 2) Prefect Varus; 3) to forsake; 4) pit; 5) annals.

40.—HOW ST. MARK SAVED VENICE

- a On the night of February the twenty-fifth, 1340, a man at the Riva di San Marco besought a fisherman, despite the latter's protests, to carry him over to San Giorgio Maggiore.
1) to fall out; 2) to rise; 3) fearful; 4) cubit; 5) canal; 6) to be at the highest; 7) to sink; 8) to set forth.
- b At San Giorgio another man joined them, and the boatman was asked to row to San Nicolo di Lido.
1) to land; 2) hesitates; 3) boldly; 4) smooth.
- c At San Nicolo a third joined the party, and the boatman was asked to row for the open sea.
1) open; 2) castle; 3) to rage; 4) to make head.

- d At the sign of the cross the approaching ship of devils vanished.
1) to fly; 2) galley; 3) demon; 4) to overwhelm; 5) calm; 6) to exorcise; 7) to vanish.
- e After landing two of his visitors where he had received them, the boatman carried the third to San Marco, and there, on demand of his fare, was told how he might prove to the Doge that this passenger was St. Mark and the savior of the city.
1) miracle; 2) to witness; 3) Procuratore; 4) tempest; 5) school-master; 6) San Felice.
- f He was given a ring to prove his tale.
1) ducat; 2) sanctuary.
- g The proof was accepted, and thanks returned to God and his saints for the deliverance of the city.
1) to present; 2) procession.

41.—SANTIAGO

- a Ramirez in 939 vowed to free Castile from the tribute of virgins.
1) shameful; 2) annually; 3) weal; 4) woe.
- b After the defeat of the first day St. Jago appeared to him, and promised him victory on the morrow.
1) Clavijo; 2) conflict; 3) to retire; 4) couch; 5) to fling; 6) fatigue.
- c The vision was recounted to the army, and St. Jago himself appeared in the battle, giving them the victory which made "Santiago" the battle-cry of Spain.
1) prelate; 2) recount; 3) to sound to battle; 4) milk-white; 5) standard.

42.—THEODOSIUS AND AMBROSE

- a The passionate Theodosius massacred seven thousand inhabitants of Thessalonica for a sedition which happened there.
1) fit; 2) violent; 3) affray; 4) massacre; 5) to sacrifice.
- b Ambrose excommunicated him, and forbade his entrance into the Cathedral of Milan even on Christmas day.
1) prelate; 2) to denounce; 3) abhorrence; 4) to supplicate; 5) porch; 6) dead.

c The excommunication was removed only on the fulfillment of two severe conditions.

- 1) interdict; 2) to relent; 3) penance; 4) sackcloth; 5) to grovel; 6) ashes.

43.—THE LEGEND OF ST. OGG

a A woman sat beside the river where Ogg was a boatman, and desired to be ferried across against the advice of the men thereabout.

- 1) Beorl; 2) to ferry; 3) scanty; 4) Floss; 5) high; 6) to moan; 7) rag; 8) to wither; 9) to crave; 10) thereabout; 11) to tarry; 12) to take shelter.

b Ogg offered himself, and ferried her across.

- 1) heart; 2) to need.

c When she reached shore, a glory covered her about, and she promised Ogg that as a reward for his kindness his boat would always be safe from peril in the storm.

- 1) to come to pass; 2) ashore; 3) to flow; 4) glory; 5) moon; 6) to wrangle; 7) to smite; 8) peril; 9) to put forth; 10) rescue; 11) to save.

d Many were saved from the floods by reason of that blessing, but at Ogg's death the boat floated away, to be seen afterwards only in time of flood when it lighted to safety.

- 1) parting; 2) to loose; 3) mooring; 4) to ebb; 5) eventide; 6) wide-spreading; 7) prow; 8) to gather; 9) to take heart.

44.—ALBERTUS MAGNUS

a Though Albert de Groot was called an ass in the University of Padua, he was admitted as a novice by the Dominicans.

- 1) Saxony; 2) to confer; 3) quick; 4) lonely; 5) dullard; 6) vocation.

b Discouraged by his dullness, he determined to leave the monastery and become a hermit.

- 1) dullness; 2) slowness; 3) burden; 4) wilderness; 5) hermit; 6) to assail; 7) novena.

- c He had put his ladder against the wall of the monastery, when the vision appeared, and he received from the Virgin the promise of knowledge.
1) cell; 2) brilliant; 3) learning; 4) philosophy; 5) to be beset; 6) to withdraw.
- d Albert became the greatest teacher in Christendom.
1) stupefaction; 2) theme; 3) to metamorphose; 4) Hildesheim; 5) Fribourg; 6) Ratisbon; 7) Strasburg; 8) to dazzle; 9) con-course; 10) to flock; 11) Place Maubert; 12) Aubert; 13) Aquinas.
- e At the age of seventy-two his learning suddenly departed, and he retired to solitude to prepare for death.
1) whisper; 2) auditory; 3) to electrify; 4) self-satisfaction; 5) source; 6) warning.

45.—A ROYAL CHARITY

- a The devotion of Elizabeth to the poor and to piety did not meet with the approval of her mother-in-law.
1) Thuringia; 2) allurements; 3) to clothe; 4) income; 5) worldly-minded; 6) frivolity.
- b Once during the absence of her husband she laid a leper in his bed.
1) distant; 2) leper; 3) Helias; 4) deplorable; 5) to anoint; 6) balm.
- c His mother ran to inform the returning Duke.
1) to alight; 2) pretty doing.
- d She claimed Elizabeth was exposing him to the leprosy.
1) to prevent.
- e The Duke beheld Christ crucified.
1) to repress; 2) irritation; 3) covering; 4) to unseal.
- f Weeping, he told his wife to do the same thing often.
1) abundant; 2) to calm; 3) wrath; 4) guest; 5) to hinder.
- g Elizabeth got permission for an almshouse half-way up the mountain.
1) signal; 2) to profit; 3) midway; 4) rocky height; 5) to crown; 6) Wartbourg; 7) feeble.

46.—THE BOY MARTYR

- a Unshaken by the sufferings of others, Pancratius stood in the arena.
1) to devote; 2) shake; 3) to contrast; 4) swarthy; 5) brawny; 6) executioner.
- b A bear and a leopard let loose against the praying boy seemed held divinely.
1) fetter; 2) to stretch out; 3) to breathe fury; 4) snort; 5) to tear.
- c When the bull imitated his predecessors, the Emperor called to the boy to provoke him.
1) mob; 2) frantic; 3) to career; 4) to lash; 5) to charm; 6) stone; 7) to paw; 8) to bellow; 9) to roar out.
- d Pancratius waved his arms, and when the bull showed his temper, some one cried out that the boy was a sorcerer.
1) trance; 2) to toss; 3) to disconcert; 4) sorcerer.
- e At the Emperor's command Pancratius explained the amulet, and asked for the panther.
1) to re-echo; 2) amulet; 3) moisten; 4) crown.
- f Amid dead silence, the panther approached his victim and sprang at him.
1) avalanche; 2) to start up; 3) magic; 4) graceful; 5) to frisk; 6) to gambol; 7) feline; 8) velvet-covered; 9) dell; 10) stealthy; 11) sleek; 12) to disdain; 13) to crouch; 14) suspense; 15) to snarl; 16) elastic; 17) leech; 18) fang; 19) fore-claw.
- g The martyr slept.
1) artery; 2) to sever; 3) slumber.

47.—A CHRISTIAN SOLDIER

- a Maximian's love being turned to hate, he ordered Sebastian to be slowly killed, but the latter's friends paid for his life.
1) vindictive; 2) Hyphax; 3) to sting; 4) pin-thrust; 5) to bribe; 6) insensibility.
- b He was shot at by the band of unsympathizing Africans, and was uncheered by the smile of a single friend.
1) dungeon; 2) martyrdom; 3) quarters; 4) Adonis; 5) archer; 6) am-

phitheater; 7) to cheer; 8) human; 9) hunter; 10) to nerve;
11) truss; 12) horde; 13) swarthy; 14) uncouth; 15) banditti.

c Sebastian saw the only witnesses he cared for.

1) angel; 2) to dazzle; 3) bowman.

d It was sport for all except the martyr.

1) ear; 2) to tremble; 3) marksman; 4) vital; 5) to brawl; 6) to jeer;
7) to droop; 8) to paint; 9) earnest; 10) pang; 11) smart;
12) knotty.

e The martyr did not reach glory, for when he sank unconscious, the executioners cut the cords.

1) dreary; 2) golden gate; 3) lap; 4) tormentor; 5) carpet; 6) pavement.

f The Christians nursed him back to life, but he won his crown a few days later.

1) to nurse; 2) to drag; 3) to upbraid; 4) club; 5) to covet.

48.—“QUO VADIS, DOMINE?”

a Two figures were on the Appian Way.

1) dawn; 2) dark; 3) Campania.

b They were Peter and Nazarius.

1) to yield.

c Distinct lines were beginning to mark the landscape.

1) green; 2) to border; 3) saffron; 4) silver-leaved; 5) marble; 6) arch;
7) gold; 8) rosy; 9) Alban; 10) lily-colored; 12) ray.

d The light was reflected everywhere, and vistas opened through the mists.

1) to tremble; 2) dewdrop; 3) haze; 4) thin; 5) to dot.

e Only the shoes of the travelers gave a sound.

1) villager; 2) to harness; 3) block; 4) mountain; 5) bark.

f Nazarius did not see the vision which burst on Peter.

1) line; 2) golden circle; 3) to rise; 4) road.

g Peter said a figure was approaching.

1) to shade; 2) gleam.

- h As no sound was heard, Nazarius asked Peter what ailed him.
 1) slight; 2) to quiver; 3) to spread.
- i Peter was stunned.
 1) staff; 2) pilgrim; 3) to depict; 4) rapture.
- j Peter, on the ground, cried out to Christ.
 1) knee; 2) to kiss.
- k Peter asked with sobs:—"Quo vadis, Domine?"
 1) to break.
- l Peter heard the answer.
 1) sad; 2) to desert.
- m Peter turned back.
 1) dust; 2) to faint; 3) to tremble; 4) seven hills.
- n Peter told the boy he was going to his death.
 1) echo.

49.—OSHIDORI

- a Sonjo was so hungry that he killed the male of the Oshidori.
 1) falconer; 2) Tamura-no-go; 3) Mutsu; 4) game; 5) Akanuma;
 6) pair; 7) rush.
- b That night a weeping woman in a dream told him that on the morrow he would know what he had done.
 1) dreary; 2) pillow; 3) to tear out; 4) marrow; 5) twilight; 6) to utter; 7) piteously.
- c In the morning Sonjo resolved to learn the meaning of the dream.
 1) vivid; 2) to resolve.
- d The duck killed herself.
 1) to swim; 2) fixed; 3) to tear open; 4) to shave.

50.—THE STORY OF OTEI

- a When Otei became aware of her approaching death, she sent for her betrothed.
 1) Niigata; 2) Echizen; 3) Nagao; 4) Chosei; 5) to betroth; 6) fatal;
 7) farewell.

- b (C) "We will meet again."
1) childhood; 2) to bury; 3) womanhood.
- c As he pledged fidelity, she died.
1) to soothe; 2) to pledge; 3) existence.
- d Though faithful to the memory of Otei, Nagao was obliged to marry.
1) sincerely; 2) solemn; 3) tablet; 4) dim; 5) dream.
- e He journeyed forth to forget his misfortunes.
1) desolate; 2) to abandon.
- f He met a girl who resembled Otei in everything.
1) mountain village; 2) thermal; 3) scenery; 4) to leap; 5) to pinch;
6) chamber; 7) to sadden; 8) Ikao.
- g (C) "Who are you?"
1) to startle.
- h (C) "You are my promised husband."
1) seal; 2) Butsudan; 3) Echigo.
- i She was married, but could never again remember her past.
1) previous; 2) to kindle.

51.—UBAZAKURA

- a Tokubei, the rich, prayed for a child.
1) Asamimura; 2) Onsen-gori; 3) Iyo; 4) Muraosa (headman);
5) childlessness.
- b His wife gave birth to a daughter.
1) deficient; 2) milk-nurse; 3) Tsyu; 4) O-Sode.
- c On the prayer of O-Sode the girl was cured.
1) mother's love; 2) to recover.
- d O-Sode was announced dying on the morning after the feast.
1) to attend.
- e (C) "Plant the cherry tree for me."
1) thank-offering; 2) commemoration; 3) to fulfill the vow.
- f The cherry tree blossomed for two hundred and fifty-four years on the anniversary of the nurse's death.
1) to flourish; 2) to blossom; 3) nipple; 4) to bedew; 5) Ubazakura.

52.—MUJINA

- a There is an avoided slope in Tokyo.
1) Akasaka; 2) Tokyo; 3) Kii; 4) moat; 5) lofty; 6) street-lamp;
7) jinrikisha; 8) belated; 9) pedestrian; 10) Mujina.
- b An old man saw the Mujina.
- c He stopped to assist a weeping woman.
1) to crouch; 2) to drown; 3) graceful; 4) slight.
- d (C) "Let me assist you."
1) to hide; 2) sleeve; 3) to implore.
- e She showed him while he spoke a face without features.
1) to moan; 2) to sob; 3) to plead; 4) to stroke.
- f He ran to the feet of a pancake-seller.
1) lantern; 2) gleam; 3) firefly; 4) itinerant; 5) to fling.
- g (C) "What ails you?" and he showed a face like an egg.
1) to pant; 2) to query; 3) to gasp; 4) egg.

53.—YUKI-ONNA

- a Mosaku and Minokichi had to reach home by a boat.
1) woodcutter; 2) apprentice; 3) ferry; 4) flood; 5) current.
- b One evening they were forced to take shelter in a miserable hut beside the river.
1) snowstorm; 2) shelter; 3) brazier; 4) straw rain-coat.
- c Minokichi lay awake for a time listening to the storm.
1) slashing; 2) to sway; 3) to creak; 4) junk; 5) to shiver.
- d The white woman breathed over Mosaku, and bending over Minokichi, said she spared him only on condition that he would never mention it to any one.
1) showering; 2) to force open; 3) snow-light; 4) to blow; 5) smoke;
6) to stoop.
- e Minokichi looked out of the door after the woman, and then found that Mosaku was dead.
1) to drive; 2) hut; 3) billet; 4) ice; 5) stark.

- f It took long for Minokichi to convalesce, but he said nothing of the vision, and returned to his calling.
1) ferryman; 2) senseless; 3) to freeze; 4) to come to; 5) nightfall; 6) bundle.
- g Snow pleased him and his mother so much that she became the "honorable daughter-in-law."
1) to overtake; 2) greeting; 3) song-bird; 4) Yedo; 5) to charm; 6) to betroth; 7) widowed; 8) shy; 9) fancy.
- h Snow won the love of her mother-in-law, and bore a large family.
1) affection; 2) fair.
- i Snow kept her youth.
1) peasant-woman; 2) country-folk; 3) to age; 4) fresh.
- j (C) "To see you sewing reminds me of something."
1) lamp.
- k (C) "What?"
1) to lift.
- l He told her of the night in the hut.
1) silent; 2) Woman of the Snow.
- m (C) "It was I, and only these children save your life."
1) to fling down; 2) to shriek.
- n She disappeared.
1) thin; 2) wind; 3) to melt; 4) mist; 5) to spire; 6) roof-beam; 7) to shudder away; 8) smoke-hole.

54.—JIU-ROKU-ZAKURA

- a A cherry tree in the province of Iyo blooms on the sixteenth day of the first month.
1) to bloom; 2) ghost.
- b When the tree died, it was the only thing the old man had to love.
1) samurai; 2) to flower; 3) strip; 4) to wither.
- c His joy in the new tree was only pretended.
1) to plant; 2) to comfort; 3) pain.

- d He suicided in order to give life to the tree.
1) Migawari Ni Tatsu; 2) divers; 3) harakiri.
- e The tree still blooms.
1) snow.

55.—RIKI-BAKA

- a I was forced to drive Riki-Baka away on account of his noise
1) childhood; 2) mosquito-curtain; 3) to clap; 4) broomstick; 5) peal;
6) submissively; 7) to trail; 8) chicken.
- b (C) "I asked a woodcutter."
1) woodcutter; 2) fuel; 3) bundle.
- c (C) "He is dead."
- d (C) "His mother wrote on his hand, and prayed for a re-birth."
1) palm; 2) kana.
- e (C) "A child was born three months ago."
1) honorable; 2) visible.
- f (C) "The people were angry and asked where Riki was buried."
1) vegetable-seller; 2) to bury; 3) clay.
- g (C) "They took the clay."
1) graveyard; 2) to wrap; 3) square.
- h (C) "To rub the skin is the only way to remove those characters."
1) former.

56.—THE STORY OF AOYAGI

- a On his way to Kyoto, Tomotada was saved from the storm by the timely appearance of a cottage.
1) samurai; 2) daimyo; 3) settlement; 4) halting-place; 5) to thatch;
6) summit.
- b He forgot his meal in his admiration of the girl, and carried her off to make her his wife.
1) bamboo splint; 2) coarse; 3) to bewitch; 4) grateful.
- c Aoyagi was discovered, and when she was in prison Tomotada wrote her a poem.
1) consent; 2) curious; 3) palace.

- d He expected the death sentence.
1) Hosowaka; 2) to usher in; 3) presence-room; 4) dais; 5) prelude;
6) kindly.
- e (C) "I authorize your marriage."
1) lieu; 2) Lord of Noto; 3) wedding.
- f The wedding was splendid.
1) sliding-screen; 2) apartment; 3) dignitary.
- g After five years of happiness, Aoyagi one day suddenly cried out, while Tomotada tried to calm her, (C) "We will meet again, but I die now."
1) household; 2) feeble; 3) Karma-relation; 4) existence; 5) unwell;
6) sap.
- h As her husband sprang forward, on the floor lay only her empty robes.
1) to collapse; 2) matting; 3) empty.
- i The wandering priest found three willow stumps.
1) to shave; 2) Buddhist; 3) itinerant; 4) province; 5) soul.
- j He erected a memorial tomb.
1) to inscribe; 2) divers; 3) rite.

57.—THE LEGEND OF HORSESHOE FALLS

- a An Indian maiden resolved to die.
1) hideous; 2) Sachem; 3) desperation; 4) Niagara; 5) arm.
- b Hinun flew to her rescue.
1) deity; 2) to dwell; 3) to run; 4) launching; 5) canoe; 6) frail; 7) to dash.
- c She learned many things from Hinun.
1) busy; 2) to coil up; 3) lair; 4) to poison; 5) to crave.
- d At the death of the suitor, Hinun sent the maiden home.
1) ugly; 2) to bid.
- e Hinun killed the serpent when it followed the Indians.
1) to break up; 2) to prevail; 3) cunning; 4) to outwit; 5) to drag;
6) to launch.

f The breaking of the rocks beneath the serpent caused the falls.

- 1) enormous; 2) flight; 3) mountain; 4) to be become wedged; 5) to press on.

58.—WHY THE BEAR HAS NO TAIL

a A fox duped a fisherman out of a mess of fish.

- 1) ruse; 2) delicacy; 3) to feign; 4) preserving; 5) trick; 6) slyly.

b The wolf was unable to apply the fox's methods.

- 1) to secure; 2) business method; 3) mess.

c Forced by the appearances, the fox gave the bear a new prescription.

- 1) to settle scores; 2) Bruin; 3) fortune; 4) to make no bones; 5) to shake one's faith; 6) to be at no pains; 7) Renard; 8) to nettle; 9) to concoct.

d The bear lost his tail, just when he thought the fishing had begun.

- 1) fish-fry; 2) to nibble; 3) twitch; 4) jerk; 5) snapping off.

59.—THE LOVE OF KNOWLEDGE

a The sons of Ethelwulf were slow to learn letters.

- 1) Saxon; 2) tutor; 3) to profit.

b The queen brought about a change of mind.

- 1) Provençe; 2) sorely; 3) devoid; 4) to cast about; 5) hawking; 6) cheerless; 7) step-dame.

c She promised the beautifully illuminated book to the boy who could first read it.

- 1) rose-colored; 2) bullion; 3) to clasp; 4) vellum; 5) illumination; 7) margin.

d Only Alfred asked for the volume.

- 1) to hang one's head; 2) indolent.

e In a short time he came to claim the prize.

- 1) rudiments.

f Alfred became one of the most learned of kings.

- 1) reign; 2) proficiency; 3) acquirement.

60.—BURNT CAKES

- a Just at evening Alfred met the neatherd.
1) Saxon; 2) Dane; 3) Chippenham; 4) to bewilder; 5) marsh; 6) doleful; 7) quag; 8) miry; 9) neatherd; 10) to house.
- b Alfred discovered his identity to the hospitable old man, but not to the latter's wife.
1) plight; 2) shieling; 3) incognito; 4) shrew; 5) to begrudge; 6) fare; 7) stingily; 8) meek; 9) Switha.
- c When he was one day kept home—against his will—by the weather, he burnt the cakes intrusted to his care.
1) cot; 2) better half; 3) moor; 4) virago; 5) batch; 6) oaten; 7) hearth; 8) smell.
- d She promised him in her wrath a week of burnt bread.
1) to berate; 2) tirade; 3) amendment; 4) soft answer; 5) mouthful.
- e The king was saved from his penance, and history is silent about after-events in the life of the neatherd and his wife.
1) to invade; 2) white; 3) reviling; 4) secret.

61.—THE WERE-WOLF

- a King Edgar emerged into a rich country ripe for the harvest.
1) Shropshire; 2) ring-fence; 3) hide; 4) fallow; 5) to whiten; 6) golden; 7) to rear; 8) plummy; 9) stubble; 10) to shear; 11) to wave; 12) sickle; 13) to loiter.
- b He found two children face to face with a wolf.
1) shriek; 2) to ring out; 3) to push forward; 4) to frighten.
- c Edgar's arrow pierced the wolf just as he made ready for the spring.
1) to glare; 2) to bristle; 3) twang; 4) to whistle.
- d It was the were-wolf.
1) quarry; 2) were-wolf; 3) country-side.

62.—THE BURIAL OF THE CONQUEROR

- a Asceline Fitz-Arthur drew near the abbey of St. Stephen's.
1) to repress; 2) spire; 3) arch; 4) gray.
- b A funeral train was passing along the Orne.
1) death-knell; 2) train; 3) red glare; 4) dale; 5) to plume; 6) to canopy; 7) bier; 8) dirge.
- c The thought of burying the Conqueror on his patrimony woke a resolution in Fitz-Arthur.
1) to lay away; 2) lump; 3) to forbear; 4) shadow.
- d Hidden behind one of the pillars, Fitz-Arthur watched the entrance of the funeral procession.
1) to shroud; 2) regal; 3) ducal; 4) Normandy; 5) diadem; 6) velvet; 7) sable; 8) taper; 9) mourner; 10) chancel.
- e When the ceremonies were over, Fitz-Arthur cried out, forbidding the burial.
1) panegyric; 2) to lower; 3) to startle.
- f Fitz-Arthur was settled with and, it is said, afterwards became the friend of Henry.
1) to stand forth; 2) imperious; 3) to awe; 4) pledge; 5) Beauclerc; 6) belted; 7) token.

63.—THE LEGEND OF TELL

- a When Gessler could not frighten Tell by word, he ordered the peasant's boy to be set in the market place that he might see a specimen of the father's skill.
1) Altdorf; 2) craven; 3) homage; 4) to storm at; 5) Burglen; 6) to gleam; 7) malevolently.
- b Tell learned from the tyrant the conditions under which he was to shoot, and the penalty if he refused.
1) sardonic; 2) to cleave; 3) hoarse.
- c A crowd gathered round, and in its midst Tell nerved himself for the trial by prayer.
1) bow-shot; 2) pinion; 3) quiver; 4) to sling; 5) girdle; 6) to swim; 7) energy.

d A woman announced the result.

1) to thrill; 2) shaft; 3) twang; 4) bow-string; 5) to answer.

e Tell told Gessler the purpose of the second arrow.

1) to fold.

64.—A MOTHER'S PRAYER

a Margaret and Edward came to an open space in the forest.

1) Northampton; 2) Lancastrian; 3) Yorkist; 4) Hexham; 5) glow-worm; 6) star; 7) to glitter; 8) shadowy; 9) murmur.

b Margaret's terror was lightened by the absence of the badge of York.

1) spaniel; 2) gigantic; 3) to menace; 4) forester; 5) hostile; 6) to plume.

c The prince clung to his mother.

1) to cling.

d The queen intrusted the prince to the generosity of the man.

1) by the hand.

e When he learnt that the queen knew him, the robber promised a place of safety.

1) to conduct.

f He fulfilled his promise.

1) fern; 2) bramble; 3) Scotland; 4) presence.

65.—A STRANGE HOG

a Three men disappeared mysteriously.

1) confine; 2) Savannah; 3) to relieve; 4) guard; 5) to ambush; 6) to desert; 7) to ruminate; 8) preternatural; 9) to apprise.

b Upon one man's demur, the colonel called for a volunteer.

1) to tremble; 2) credit.

c The volunteer announced his programme.

1) ranks; 2) to command; 3) to chatter; 4) musket.

d He was left, and his anxious and admiring comrades waited.

1) ambiguous; 2) foreboding; 3) guard-house.

e At the signal they returned to see another man in the hands of the sentinel.

1) rack; 2) on the instant; 3) to drag; 4) hair.

f The soldier narrated the strange maneuvers of the hog.

1) rustling; 2) to crawl; 3) intense; 4) thicket; 5) coppice; 6) groan; 7) tomahawk.

66.—WOODEN MEN

a The sergeant and his men met a company of Indians who professed great devotion to the American cause.

1) wilderness; 2) amicable; 3) to gratify; 4) favorable.

b When they had proceeded some distance, the sergeant warned his men of their danger.

1) to halt; 2) utmost; 3) inveterate; 4) to lull.

c The men prepared themselves for attack, but saw no sign of the enemy till near midnight.

1) to cover; 2) to fell; 3) dummy; 4) repose.

d When one after another, and finally the whole band of Indians, appeared, the men restrained their fire only because of the plan of the sergeant.

1) glimmering; 2) tiptoe; 3) cautiously; 4) greedily; 5) formidable.

e The triumphant savages were shot down.

1) suspense; 2) war-whoop; 3) tomahawk.

67.—YANKEE DOODLE

a The American colonies voted troops to assist in the attack on Canada.

1) ministry; 2) quota.

b These troops were a motley mob.

1) motley; 2) ragged; 3) Sir John Falstaff; 4) facetious; 5) gravity; 6) anchorite; 7) rainbow; 8) to crop; 9) accouterment; 10) agone; 11) tout ensemble.

c Shackburg invented "Yankee Doodle," little dreaming how much chagrin it would one day cause the British.

1) wit; 2) Brother Jonathan; 3) martial; 4) levity; 5) ridicule; 6) lines.

68.—THE LAST FIGHT IN THE COLISEUM

- a There was an interruption to the shouts of ecstasy that greeted the gladiatorial contest which crowned the triumph.
1) Stilicho; 2) Goth; 3) Pollentia; 4) under way; 5) to enchant.
- b The mob called to the pious old man to leave off his Christian twaddle.
1) arena; 2) to requite; 3) howl.
- c His second attempt met a like response.
1) meddler; 2) to hold apart; 3) Alypius, the Prefect.
- d When he lay dead, the mob came to its senses.
1) to enrage; 2) to cut down; 3) to rain; 4) stark.
- e He had stopped the gladiatorial fights.
1) tomb; 2) Aymachus; 3) Telemachus; 4) to slaughter; 5) hermit.

69.—AT THE PRAYER OF THE QUEEN

- a The governor refused the unconditional surrender which the king wished to force on the starved inhabitants.
1) Calais; 2) to withstand; 3) Edward of England; 4) Philip of France; 5) banner; 6) unconditional; 7) to jeopardize.
- b The king changed his terms.
1) herald; 2) clemency; 3) townsman; 4) halter; 5) obstinacy.
- c In the midst of the weeping citizens one offered himself as victim.
1) hard; 2) market place; 3) town-hall; 4) Messieurs; 5) trust.
- d The governor delivered up to the messenger of the king Eustache de St. Pierre and his five companions.
1) burgher; 2) barefoot.
- e When the prayers of the barons failed to waken the king, the queen knelt to pray for them.
1) venerable; 2) implacable; 3) execution; 4) to stain; 5) headsmen; 6) to stream; 7) mercy.
- f The king yielded.
1) tear-stained; 2) to harden; 3) to stir; 4) noble.

70.—A CONVICT BY CHOICE

- a Abbé de Paul's charity won him the place of almoner-general.
1) Count de Joigni; 2) to go the rounds; 3) fiendish; 4) to minister.
- b The Abbé changed places with the prisoner.
1) Marseilles; 2) broken appearance; 3) solution.
- c He lived as a convict, and was only discovered against his own will.
1) gang; 2) fare; 3) hurt; 4) pressure; 5) to suppress.
- d His whole life was devoted to the convicts.
1) precedent; 2) chaplain; 3) almoner; 4) to better.

71.—THE WOMEN OF WEINSBURG

- a Wolf was given permission to depart in safety.
1) strife; 2) Guelfs and Ghibellines; 3) Bavaria; 4) Frederick of Suabia; 5) Conrad III; 6) siege.
- b Wolf's wife asked for a special privilege.
1) fair; 2) safe conduct; 3) garrison.
- c The permission was given, and the women came out with their husbands on their backs.
1) design; 2) fortress; 3) guise; 4) heirloom; 5) to stagger.
- d Conrad appreciated, and rewarded the women's act.
1) generous; 2) to alight; 3) lenient; 4) Vine Hill; 5) Weibertreue.

72.—URSUS AND THE BULL

- a Rome had never seen the equal of Ursus.
1) Lygian; 2) to blink; 3) lack; 4) vestal; 5) Augustan; 6) tree-trunk; 7) shield; 8) Hercules.
- b He saw on the aurochs the Princess Lygia.
1) shrill; 2) brazen; 3) grating; 4) podium; 5) aurochs; 6) hostage.
- c The man and beast seemed a group of statuary, so still amid so much exertion.
1) living fire; 2) to fall on; 3) ankle; 4) bow; 5) Hercules; 6) Theseus; 7) repose; 8) shaggy; 9) gigantic ball.

- d Save for the noises from the lamps and torches, the arena was silent and without motion.
1) posture; 2) crackle; 3) torch; 4) to split; 5) age; 6) monstrous; 7) to plant.
- e A groan was heard, and then the bull's head began to turn.
1) dull roar; 2) to wrest; 3) iron; 4) purple; 5) to rally; 6) remnant.
- f The groan grew louder, and the bull's head turned farther.
1) to mingle; 2) to whistle; 3) to foam.
- g A moment more it lasted.
1) crack; 2) to twist.
- h The giant freed the girl, and then began to show signs of exhaustion.
1) in a twinkple; 2) sweat; 3) to flood; 4) spectator.
- i The maiden's life was saved.
1) to go wild.

73.—THE FIGHT OF THE GLADIATORS

- a Lanio, heavily armed, and Calendio, wholly unprotected, stood face to face.
1) mail; 2) ridge; 3) beetle; 4) loins; 5) trident.
- b Calendio followed the retreating Gaul, singing his song.
1) visor; 2) retiarius; 3) to circle; 4) statuesque; 5) to wave.
- c They played with one another, with no result.
1) huge; 2) to encase; 3) bronze; 4) three-pronged; 5) to quiver; 6) ill omen; 7) masterly.
- d The retiarius tricked the Gaul, and threw him to earth after more play.
1) precision; 2) edge; 3) to feign; 4) to wield; 5) to bring to earth.
- e Entangled and stabbed, the Gaul lay beneath the trident.
1) in a twinkple; 2) mesh; 3) to entangle; 4) stab; 5) to press; 6) handle.
- f At Cæsar's signal, Calendio dispatched the Gaul.
1) thumb; 2) breast; 3) armor; 4) three-edged blade.

74.—THE SEJAN STEED

- a The Sejan steed and Paulus Aemilius Lepidus stood side by side in the arena.
1) sire; 2) to mangle; 3) groom; 4) to muzzle; 5) thong; 6) greave; 7) housing.
- b At the sound of the trumpet, Paulus prepared himself for the contest.
1) truncheon; 2) to sheath; 3) bronze; 4) to thrust; 5) stave.
- c After he had mounted and made ready, he signaled the grooms to let loose the horse.
1) to spring; 2) to carry; 3) to blaze.
- d The audience cheered the youth's agility in mounting and descending.
1) to rear; 2) to paw; 3) hither; 4) crash; 5) thud; 6) to dart; 7) to greet; 8) feat.
- e Overcome and guided by the torches, the horse circled the arena and finally rushed away into the open country.
1) fell; 2) to writhe; 3) catamount; 4) to lash out; 5) to tread; 6) to flow; 7) to fleck; 8) storm-beaten.
- f At sunset the youth returned with the conquered horse to receive the applause of the spectators and the thanks of the slave.
1) level; 2) shield; 3) to silhouette; 4) head-gear; 5) golden flames.

75.—THE PASSING OF THE VETERAN

- a Kehoe soon knew that the enemy were aware of his weakness.
1) scrimmage; 2) furtive; 3) a-quiver; 4) streak; 5) bark; 6) avalanche; 7) to crumple; 8) to writhe; 9) lithe; 10) to paralyze.
- b The cruel failure of that season flashed through his mind.
1) vivid; 2) fragment; 3) grasp; 4) vigorous; 5) momentum; 6) with thumbs down; 7) verdict.
- c He resolved to stop the blue line, but it rolled on.
1) idol; 2) to hurl; 3) pack of wolves; 4) hungry; 5) to welt; 7) to sting; 8) threat.

- d He awoke to a cry for Cochran that almost thrust him to earth.
1) to emerge; 2) roar; 3) fiendish; 4) to hurtle; 5) to hammer; 6) to vent; 7) frenzy; 8) to convulse; 9) livid; 10) to distort.
- e He caught sight of Cochran on the side-lines, and determined to give up in his favor.
1) to still; 2) hazy; 3) drone; 4) to crouch; 5) hawk; 6) to dilate; 7) to pulsate; 8) tense; 9) taut-corded; 10) to quiver; 11) tiger; 12) futile; 13) renunciation; 14) thrill.
- f (C) He called time, telling the referee simply that he was going out, and called in Cochran.
1) sharp; 2) lump; 3) to burst.
- g Cochran was greeted with applause.
1) to bound; 2) to leash; 3) tumult.
- h A tear rolled down Kehoe's cheek.
1) to trickle; 2) silver; 3) to corrode; 4) zigzag; 5) grime; 6) wonder.
- i He stood up, throwing off the momentary softness.
1) to scramble; 2) to streak; 3) visage.
- j Cochran had made a gain.
1) to paw; 2) to pounce.
- k Kehoe won the game.

76.—WHEN THE ICE BROKE

- a One day, when the ice had been running down the river for a week, a boy announced to two foundry-men that a woman was being carried away on a floe.
1) berg; 2) Skerret's Point.
- b The men, standing on the bank, saw the dark object drifting farther and farther away.
1) Dick Wade; 2) Bill Tarbox; 3) hemlock-crested; 4) leaden-green; 5) to wrinkle; 6) gray.
- c They took the skiff.
1) crazy; 2) wobbly; 3) boat-hook.
- d Their progress was for the most part slow.
1) lead; 2) porridge; 3) brash; 4) to baffle.

- e Despite the perilous condition of their boat, they went right on.
 1) stem; 2) to nip; 3) to ooze in; 4) crackling; 5) crunching; 6) to urge on.
- f The condition of the ice and the position of the figure warned them to hurry.
 1) to cleave; 2) weary.
- g The mist made steering hard.
 1) snow-dust; 2) squall; 3) curtain; 4) glimpse; 5) to roar.
- h In the re-appearing light they reached, and saved the woman.
 1) to cut in; 2) snow-flurry; 3) luminous; 4) to part; 5) to resuscitate.

77.—A BUMPING RACE

- a The Cantabs have a way of their own of racing.
 1) Cam; 2) canal.
- b The Caius men came on rowing leisurely.
 1) flash; 2) to bend to; 3) "cortége"; 4) "Reach"; 5) leisurely.
- c Amid the shouts of partisans, Trinity forced Caius to spurt.
 1) magical; 2) nightmare; 3) to overhaul; 4) shiver.
- d Trinity came so near the foe that her partisans raised the shout of victory.
 1) vain; 2) slashing; 3) exultant.
- e The Caius steersman saved his boat.
 1) rudder; 2) to fall off; 3) to overlap.
- f After escaping a second time, Caius was driven to the further bank and bumped.
 1) to hail; 2) dexterous; 3) to baffle; 4) coxswain; 5) to avert; 6) to hoist.

78.—THE EASTER BELLS OF FELDKIRCH

- a The armies of Napoleon were sweeping along in a resistless tide.
 1) tide; 2) to resist.
- b On Easter morning the people of Feldkirch awoke to see above it the army under Massena sent by Napoleon to reduce the little town.
 1) frontier; 2) Austria; 3) God-fearing; 4) housewife; 5) fowl; 6) to encamp; 7) file.

- c In the consternation, surrender was suggested.
1) consternation; 2) to hurry; 3) to overwhelm; 4) truce; 5) sack.
- d The priest gained attention.
1) juncture; 2) to revere; 3) counsel.
- e (C) "Let us trust in God."
1) distress; 2) calamity; 3) vast.
- f To the accompaniment of ringing bells, the people thronged to church.
1) sexton; 2) to throng; 3) to menace; 4) to interfere.
- g The misinformed French General retired.
1) reënforcement; 2) to relieve; 3) to retire.
- h The people thanked God for their deliverance.
1) to steal away; 2) knee; 3) deliverance.

79.—THE BELL OF JUSTICE

- a The people hung the bell in obedience to the King's command.
1) realm; 2) obedience; 3) ceremony.
- b (C) "This bell will insure justice to all."
1) treatment; 2) magistrate; 3) to wrong.
- c The summons of the bell was never unanswered.
1) homeless; 2) to beat; 3) to succeed.
- d A horse chanced to ring the bell.
1) to rot away; 2) indolent; 3) to starve; 4) to nibble.
- e The magistrate, finding that the horse had rung the bell, gave him justice.
1) summons; 2) distress; 3) penalty; 4) to provide.

80.—ON THE WAY TO THE FIRE

- a The team of the truck were running away down a narrow street straight for the water-front.
1) to unsnap; 2) to pound out; 3) clatter; 4) stampede; 5) pulse;
6) well-reined; 7) to tear.

- b They sped on within two streets of the water-front, the brakes helpless to stop them.
1) ball-bearings; 2) mighty-flanked; 3) pillar; 4) toboggan; 5) to whip past; 6) to swallow; 7) tunnel.
- c Brunton climbed forward.
1) nimble; 2) turn-table; 3) to peer; 4) cat; 5) to crouch.
- d In the flash of a corner-light, Meaghan saw Brunton moving forward along the off horse.
1) lurch; 2) corner; 3) to work forward; 4) astride; 5) mane.
- e After half a block, Meaghan gave up hope of Brunton succeeding in throwing the horse, and spoke an order to Donnelly.
1) cavalryman; 2) mount; 3) filly; 4) Percheron; 5) feeble; 6) to flow by; 7) slackening; 8) to groan.
- f Two shots rang out.
1) flash; 2) echo.
- g The truck jammed into the tangle of fallen horses.
1) asphalt; 2) heap; 3) to jam; 4) lurch.
- h Meaghan ran forward, calling for Brunton.
1) to force down; 2) hoarsely.
- i He ordered the men, unbuckling the straps at his command, to cut them.
1) Gallegher; 2) lantern; 3) flank horse; 4) to tangle.
- j Gallegher called his attention to the imperturbed Brunton.
1) to bleed; 2) curb; 3) unconcerned.

81.—THE HEART OF A GOAT

- a When his friend Gwendoline came into the paddock, Billy submitted quietly to the tyrant Tommy and the cart.
1) to flood; 2) paddock; 3) to pat; 4) buckle; 5) compensation; 6) docile; 7) to hitch.
- b Tommy ran off to get the strap.
1) to raise; 2) to discover; 3) to dart; 4) to warn.
- c Gwendoline disobeyed.
1) lustily.

- d In his anxiety to escape from Tommy, Billy, to his own grief and remorse, threw Gwendoline from the cart.
1) smartly; 2) Somers Street; 3) gurgle; 4) lightening; 5) ominous;
6) softly; 7) rose pink; 8) to smite; 9) safeguard.
- e When Billy woke up to the danger, he threw himself at the onrushing horse.
1) stock still; 2) stricken; 3) clatter; 4) phaëton; 5) to crash along;
6) engine; 7) flutter; 8) heap.
- f The hero was soon forgotten.
1) to bury; 2) puppy; 3) mound.

82.—JUANITO'S DREAM GIFT

- a By noon of Easter day the happy bells had not brought much joy to Juanito.
1) cuarto; 2) bull-baiting; 3) Virgin de la Esperanza; 4) nook.
- b Two tourists commented on the sleeping boy.
1) windfall; 2) silver.
- c The gentleman complied with the lady's suggestion.
1) mechanical; 2) contact.
- d He dreamt that the Virgin appeared to him, and promised him a gift.
1) ladder; 2) rainbow; 3) to recompense.
- e Awaking from the joy of the dream, he discovered the coin and ran for the Plaza de Toros.
1) petal; 2) rose; 3) white; 4) peseta; 5) bound.
- f He met Chata.
1) Callo San Pablo; 2) slip; 3) great black eyes.
- g (C) Juanito questioned her, and learned the facts of her mother's sickness.
1) medicine; 2) to toll; 3) to outlive.
- h He gave her his coin, telling her it had come from the Virgin.
1) silent; 2) tearful; 3) to vex.
- i Chata took the gift hurriedly.
1) to excite; 2) druggist.
- j Juanito wondered how he could be so happy.
1) contentment; 2) to wonder.

83.—THE DWARF'S GIFT

- a Parpon was chosen to bear the petition of starving Pontiac to the world.
1) to starve; 2) pinched; 3) Curé; 4) volunteer; 5) Quebec; 6) Avocat; 7) drudge.
- b The little, uncouth man attracted the attention of all passers by.
1) uncouth; 2) Picardy; 3) Place de Cathedral; 4) to lessen; 5) to loiter; 6) to catch up; 7) revolt; 8) to halt; 9) to stroll; 10) raw; 11) unshapely; 12) to thrill.
- c The governor's wife began to gather money in the dwarf's hat.
1) to step; 2) sleigh.
- d Out of love for the past she insisted on gathering the money herself
1) tear; 2) sight.
- e He sang in the public halls for several nights amid the greatest enthusiasm.
1) dwarf; 2) moccasin; 3) comforter; 4) divine; 5) Provençal; 6) simple folk.
- f He disappeared from Quebec, to appear the following Sunday at Pontiac.
1) St. Savior; 2) chancel.
- g Parpon gave the bag to the priest, and immediately moved away.
1) to whisper; 2) thanksgiving; 3) to trot; 4) aisle.
- h (C) "We have through Parpon money enough for the present and shall have more against seed-time."
1) to shame; 2) seed-time; 3) to demand.
- i Only two knew who had helped Pontiac.
1) to pass; 2) need.

84.—THE ORIGIN OF ROAST PIG

- a Bo-bo burnt the cottage and litter of pigs during Ho-ti's absence.
1) swineherd; 2) wont; 3) mast; 4) lubberly; 5) yonker; 6) bundle; 7) to kindle; 8) conflagration; 9) litter.

- b While Bo-bo stood in consternation over the loss, especially of the pigs, an odor, unknown to him, assailed his nostrils.
1) consternation; 2) tenement; 3) to wring; 4) remnant; 5) nostrils; 6) firebrand.
- c He stuck his burnt fingers in his mouth, and tasted roast pig.
1) to stoop; 2) booby; 3) to scorch; 4) crumb; 5) to fumble; 6) to lick.
- d Understanding the source of the delicious taste, he became so immersed in dispatching roast pig as to disregard his father's blows.
1) handful; 2) to cram; 3) rafter; 4) retributive cudgel; 5) to rain, 6) rogue; 7) hailstone; 8) to engross.
- e (C) To his father's angry words, Bo-bo replied with an invitation to taste the pig.
1) to devour; 2) to eat fire.
- f The angry father soon became a party to the offense.
1) to tingle; 2) to rake out; 3) to rend asunder; 4) to thrust; 5) savor; 6) ado; 7) to dispatch.
- g The secret of Ho-ti and his son was discovered, and led to a notable increase of fires till ovens and stoves were invented.
1) to farrow; 2) to chastise; 3) indulgent; 4) to retire; 5) guild; 6) to revive.

85.—MR. WINKLE'S RIDE

- a The Pickwickians were off on a jaunt, three in a chaise, one on horse-back.
1) jaunt; 2) Manor Farm; 3) chaise; 4) saddle; 5) Pickwick; 6) Snodgrass; 7) Tupman; 8) Winkle.
- o Mr. Snodgrass asked Mr. Winkle why the latter's horse moved so strangely.
1) bin; 2) to drift.
- c After a twentieth repetition of his horse's strange performance, Mr. Pickwick cried out that he had lost his whip.
1) to concentrate; 2) to jerk; 3) to tug; 4) to dart; 5) maneuver.
- d Mr. Snodgrass requested the badly shaken Mr. Winkle to pick up the whip.
1) equestrian; 2) ear; 3) to shake.

- e Mr. Winkle complied after some effort, and prepared to remount.
1) black in the face; 2) charger; 3) to dismount.
- f For some reason, not known, the horse pulled as far from Mr. Winkle as possible.
1) playfulness; 2) innocent; 3) to perform a journey; 4) definite; 5) to actuate.
- g Being unable, despite his flattery, to approach the horse, Mr. Winkle, after ten minutes, applied to Mr. Pickwick for help.
1) soothingly; 2) to be proof against; 3) to sidle away; 4) coaxing; 5) wheedling.
- h Mr. Pickwick responded.
1) impersonation; 2) hedge.
- i The surprised Messrs. Winkle and Pickwick were roused from their stupefaction by a noise at a little distance.
1) refractory; 2) retrograde; 3) to wrench out; 4) blank.
- j (C) "The other horse!"
1) agonized.
- k The desertion of their steeds and the destruction of their vehicle left the Pickwickians to journey to their destination on foot.
1) heat; 2) to dash; 3) wooden; 4) perch; 5) stock still; 6) to trudge.

86.—THE FESTIVAL OF THE GUILLOTINE

- a The multitude moved towards the Rue St. Honoré and the approaching gendarmes.
1) eddying; 2) gendarme; 3) alarum; 4) squadron.
- b In the midst of the squadron was the carriage, and beside the carriage Santerre.
1) miserable; 2) to horse; 3) postilion; 4) cockade; 5) notorious.
- c The king could be seen in the carriage.
1) to press close; 2) glimpse; 3) plaster.
- d On arriving at the scaffold, the king showed a disinclination to losing his coat and to being bound.
1) to shriek; 2) fist; 3) to retreat.

- e At the sight of the crucifix, the king submitted, and the mob grew silent.
1) to exhort; 2) cravat; 3) execration.
- f The king proclaimed his innocence.
1) to fringe; 2) to threaten.
- g At the demonstration by Santerre, the drums drowned the king's voice.
1) to rear; 2) rattle.
- h The executioner threw the king along the plank.
1) arm; 2) guillotine; 3) block.
- i In an instant the knife did its work.
1) to crouch; 2) lightning; 3) hawk; 4) to pounce; 5) groove; 6) to quiver; 7) pallid; 8) ruddy; 9) to topple; 10) to gush forth.
- j The headsman held up the head for further ignominy.
1) headsman; 2) a-flutter; 3) dumb; 4) to resound; 5) slap.
- k A scene of blood-madness followed.
1) "Vive la Nation"; 2) hoarse; 3) to fling one's self; 4) to hurl;
5) basket; 6) to smear; 7) to spatter; 8) to roar out.

87.—A RIDE WITH A PANTHER

- a The quickness with which the woman drew near to me puzzled me.
1) bottom; 2) campaign; 3) to scream; 4) lustily; 5) to puzzle.
- b The panther understood that I had discovered him.
1) to grin; 2) to call up; 3) to give head; 4) to bolt; 5) to ease on a horse; 6) ruse; 7) to snarl.
- c I was in terror of being passed, and showed it by a yell which discovered the whereabouts of the panther.
1) to out-travel; 2) to chill; 3) to rake off; 4) to overhang; 5) to answer.
- d As we raced down the hill, I could distinguish the panther.
1) fairly; 2) climb; 3) shadow; 4) greenish; 5) coal.
- e The horse slackened on the ascent.
1) to sweep across; 2) hollow; 3) to slacken; 4) pitch; 5) to heave;
6) foam.

f Losing his hold on my foot, he leaped on the horse's flanks to my terror.

1) to circle; 2) to lunge; 3) claw; 4) haunch; 5) shrilly; 6) to paralyze; 7) to chatter; 8) to blaze.

g At the end of that eternity of helpless terror, the horse freed himself from the panther.

1) weapon; 2) shrill; 3) to enrage; 4) gash.

h The last kick ended the battle.

1) to grumble; 2) sulkily.

i I had to be helped from the horse.

1) unstrung; 2) limp.

88.—AN AUTOBIOGRAPHY

a (C) "My first recollections are of a mine."

1) St. Mary's; 2) Little Sweet Voice; 3) belfry; 4) to stray 5) wet; 6) hanging ceiling; 7) timber; 8) gallery; 9) niche; 10) flickering; 11) goblin; 12) to bump.

b (C) "I next stopped on a pile of ore-rock."

1) stage; 2) to blind; 3) to heave; 4) newcomer; 5) shoulder; 6) sharpness.

c (C) "At the next stage of my travels, I received a warm reception."

1) furnace; 2) agony; 3) to relax; 4) to shrivel; 5) scale; 6) livid; 7) dipper.

d (C) "I have suffered from rheumatism ever since."

1) delicious; 2) torment; 3) cramping; 4) to straighten.

e (C) "I made a rough journey."

1) broad-wheeled; 2) to puff; 3) to stumble; 4) rutty.

f (C) "I was jolted into position."

1) block and tackle; 2) to settle; 3) lifting engine.

g (C) "I have called out men to three wars."

1) thrill; 2) to toll; 3) cheerful.

h (C) "I relearnt the gay tunes, and have never lost the sweetness of my voice."

1) peal; 2) hallelujah; 3) melody; 4) caroler; 5) pelt; 6) to crack.

- i** He tried a measure, and called Sweet Voice's attention to his tone.
1) round; 2) brass; 3) throat.
- j** The silence of the smaller bell drew from him a condemnation of the younger generation.
1) garrulous; 2) clang.

89.—HOW THE CHARTER WAS SAVED

- a** For a year Sir Edmund Andros attempted to wrest their liberties from the Colonies.
1) James II; 2) determined effort; 3) charter rights; 4) to disdain; 5) to exert authority; 6) patent.
- b** After a long argument during the session of the Connecticut assembly, the Governor at last had the Charter laid before Sir Edmund.
1) to make a stand; 2) session; 3) body-guard; 4) peremptorily; 5) Governor Treat; 6) presiding officer; 7) to waste hours; 8) tal-low; 9) colonial; 10) to deepen into rage; 11) reluctant; 12) parchment.
- c** At that moment the room was thrown into darkness.
1) critical; 2) diversion; 3) important; 4) deftly; 5) circle.
- d** Amid the general confusion the Governor cried out in indignation.
1) to ensue; 2) lusty cheer; 3) treachery; 4) at work.
- e** When the candles were lighted, the box was found empty.
1) to elapse; 2) to shed a feeble light; 3) glow; 4) blank astonishment.
- f** A man had passed through the crowd and out of the open window, crying out to those without that he had the Charter.
1) lane; 2) sash.
- g** While Sir Andros raged, the man hid the Charter.
1) throng; 2) to fume; 3) imposing; 4) cavity; 5) to thrust; 6) packet; 7) débris.
- h** The man was Captain Joseph Wadsworth.
1) tradition; 2) daring patriot; 3) to play a part.
- i** The Charter Oak fell in 1856.
1) Hartford; 2) to venerate; 3) tempest; 4) decay.

90.—THE PICKWICKIANS ON THE ICE

- a Mr. Pickwick and his friends retired to the pond, where Bob Sawyer was soon performing mystic evolutions, while Mr. Winkle struggled with his skates.
1) to betake one's self; 2) dexterity; 3) gimlet; 4) to complicate.
- b Mr. Winkle was assisted by Sam Weller, to whom he made several rather commonplace observations about the ice.
1) to clutch; 2) to drown; 3) slippery; 4) uncommon; 5) frantic desire.
- c (C) Mr. Winkle exchanged several remarks with Sam, and made several requests for assistance, while Mr. Pickwick encouraged from afar.
1) awkward; 2) to stagger; 3) anxiety; 4) ghastly; 5) fast.
- d His assistant was called away from the struggling Winkle.
1) to stoop forward; 2) to double up; 3) un-swanlike; 4) "governor."
- e Mr. Weller's parting shove led to disastrous results.
1) to disengage; 2) agonized; 3) impetus; 4) unhappy mortal; 5) to bear down; 6) a flourish of unparalleled beauty; 7) spasmodic; 8) to depict; 9) anguish.
- f The party took to sliding, after Mr. W. was relieved of his skates.
1) pastime.
- g Mr. Pickwick's disappearance caused general consternation.
1) at its height; 2) sharp crack; 3) prompt; 4) with might and main.
- h On his appearance Mr. Pickwick was greeted with petitions which were quite unnecessary.
1) to emerge; 2) to disclose; 3) adjuration.
- i A great hubbub was made over his rescue.
1) prodigy of valor; 2) shawl; 3) to escort.

91.—AN AUTUMN SUNSET

- a The sun struggled through the clouds at evening.
1) to decline; 2) to struggle through; 3) to obscure.
- b Spring seemed to live again.
1) flash of memory; 2) to shed a glory on a scene; 3) to sparkle; 4) to resist to the last; 5) to nip; 6) sullen; 7) to twitter; 8) to taper; 9) ivy-shaded; 10) to hoard; 11) ruddiness.

- c Even the signs of winter seemed to have found a way to look cheerful.
1) token; 2) to tinge; 3) fragrance; 4) to strew; 5) unison; 6) stubbled;
7) coral bead; 8) garniture; 9) to crunch; 10) to crackle;
11) ruddy; 12) athwart; 13) swarthy; 14) to mantle in among;
15) to use as foils.
- d In one moment all the glad cheerfulness was gone.
1) to pile up; 2) airy; 3) battlement; 4) gloom.
- e The wind rose, and night, with its end of work, came.
1) to rattle; 2) to wither; 3) shelter; 4) to trudge.
- f The village forge stood out brilliantly.
1) lusty bellows; 2) clinking; 3) emulation; 4) melancholy; 5) to
hover; 6) lounge; 7) hearth; 8) cricket.

92.—THE TWO COWARDS

- a "Shuttle-Griccy," the bragging silk-weaver, was chosen as spy by
General Jourdan.
1) assault; 2) nickname; 3) to outbrag; 4) to set up; 5) Agricola.
- b Early in the morning our spy started out on his mission along the
ditch.
1) to buckle on; 2) cabbage; 3) brace of pistols; 4) to dangle; 5) to
skulk; 6) break; 7) Monteux.
- c The Carpentras folks sent out a scout, who came creeping along the
same ditch, but towards us.
1) scout; 2) to creep.
- d It was amusing to the onlookers.
1) bang.
- e Some were confident of the bravery of our man, others were not, but
none could warn him.
1) to turn tail; 2) to keep one's mouth; 3) grit; 4) shorter tongue;
5) to worry; 6) Avignon.
- f Our hearts beat fast when they both reached the break.
1) beforehand; 2) to crawl; 3) nose; 4) hearts were in mouths;
5) shooting.
- g Both heads disappeared an instant after they appeared.
1) to roll over; 2) to tumble down.

- h We soon found that neither spy was dead.
1) to fire; 2) flash of sword; 3) to untangle.
- i During the retreat they began to fire off their arms.
1) to bang off; 2) to see the dust flying.
- j The other scout fled into the city, and "Shuttle-Griccy" rushed in to us with a wondrous tale.
1) city gate; 2) to bolt into a place.
- k The laughter of the men awoke him to the ridiculousness of his position.
1) to roar with laughter.

93.—ROBIN HOOD AND THE CORN-ENGROSSER

- a Robin Hood was soliloquizing on the desirability of an adventure.
1) grassy bank; 2) wayside cross; 3) Sherwood Forest; 4) merry adventure; 5) jolly.
- b A sorry-looking horse, and a rider, as sorry-looking, appeared.
1) to spy; 2) to cut a figure; 3) weazened; 4) dried up; 5) nag; 6) ragged; 7) mouse; 8) jagged; 9) hoop; 10) clog; 11) palm's breadth; 12) to stud.
- c Robin was anxious to cause the Corn-Engrosser discomfiture.
1) wayfarer; 2) Corn-Engrosser; 3) Lincoln; 4) exorbitant; 5) miserly; 6) discomfiture.
- d (C) The Corn-Engrosser first abused the petitioner, and then declared he had no money about him.
1) king's highway; 2) sour voice; 3) farthing; 4) to snarl; 5) sturdy rogue; 6) hempen collar; 7) to stroll; 8) groat; 9) haunt.
- e (C) Robin, with many signs of caution, assured the Engrosser that he was no beggar, and ended by displaying a purse.
1) grain; 2) purse of money.
- f (C) "I have a little hiding place in these clogs."
1) nigh; 2) sweet; 3) four-score; 4) to clink; 5) to tell tales.
- g (C) Robin laughed loud enough to arouse a protest from the Engrosser.
1) fox; 2) "Let us forward."

- h (C) Robin demanded the clogs, and on inquiry, disclosed himself.
1) barefoot; 2) to take a fancy to anything; 3) hereabouts.
- i The Engrosser gave up the clogs, and Robin, explaining why he did not invite him to dinner, sent him off.
1) to quake; 2) wayfarer; 3) dealing; 4) to leave a nasty taste; 5) flank.

94.—THE BLACKSMITH AT BRANDYWINE

- a The terrible wrath of the blacksmith who ranged like Ajax over the field of Brandywine had been awakened by the slaughter of his wife and babe.
1) to plunge; 2) magic; 3) Thor-thrust; 4) death-dealer; 5) dumbly; 6) to befall; 7) to tattoo; 8) gaunt; 9) to range; 10) quarter; 11) Mary.
- b Wounded though he was, at the end of the fight he was lifted into a tree by a wagoner, and killed three men before he died on his perch.
1) to ebb; 2) wagoner; 3) retreat; 4) crotch; 5) to sprawl; 6) to reel forward.

95.—THE PHANTOM DRAGOON

- a Iron Hill once had two reasons for its name.
1) Newark; 2) hematite ore; 3) General Howe; 4) Brandywine; 5) panoply; 6) to pitch.
- b A phantom dragoon, apparently bullet-proof, caused consternation among the American sentries.
1) outpost; 2) picket; 3) Welsh Tract Church; 4) charging gait; 5) to relieve guard; 6) pallid; 7) mocking laugh.
- c The nightly appearance of the ghost continued.
1) to make the rounds; 2) annoyance.
- d The old corporal had the satisfaction of bringing the ghost to the ground.
1) skeptical; 2) to haunt; 3) to look well to; 4) priming; 5) beat of hoofs; 6) a thrill along the spine; 7) flint-lock.

e It was found that it was a British soldier who had made use of the superstitious fears of the rustics to gain information very useful to his army.

1) to scramble; 2) disposition of troops; 3) cuirass.

96.—THE SUNKEN CITY

a The richer inhabitants of the prosperous city lived in luxury, forgetful of the poor.

1) Zuyder Zee; 2) to pave; 3) ducat.

b The lady, in order to increase her possessions, ordered the captain to return with the most precious cargo he could find.

1) maiden lady; 2) counting house; 3) haughtily.

c Public curiosity had been aroused about the cargo, which, by the captain's selection, was wheat.

1) staff of life; 2) cargo; 3) precious.

d Despite the captain's protest, the woman ordered the wheat thrown into the sea, and promised to see to the execution of her order.

1) to fly into a rage; 2) kernel; 3) furious; 4) port; 5) bidding.

e The poor, informed of the coming destruction, gathered at the dock.

1) to retrace steps; 2) to assemble.

f The captain, speechless with anger, and still helpless to resist the woman, at last found voice to prophesy God's anger.

1) to implore; 2) handful; 3) to squander.

g She cast her ring into the sea with a proud defiance.

1) costlily; 2) coolly; 3) to credit; 4) want.

h In one day the ring returned, and destruction came upon all her possessions.

1) to discover; 2) deathly pale; 3) bearer of ill-tidings; 4) to find one's self shorn.

i She died neglected in a miserable shed.

1) to recognize; 2) scorn; 3) ill-treatment.

j Destruction also came on the other rich inhabitants.

1) dike; 2) reveler; 3) to submerge.

k Stavoren now lies buried beneath the sea.

- 1) to ripple; 2) to thrash into foam; 3) blast; 4) to rest on one's oars;
5) turret; 6) rampart; 7) belfry; 8) to flap; 9) to toll the knell.

97.—INTO THE JAWS OF DEATH

a Occasionally people do meet on the narrow natural bridge near Bendearg, and pass by crawling one over the other.

- 1) artificial; 2) chasm; 3) masonry; 4) rugged; 5) eyrie; 6) circuit;
7) to crawl.

b Cairn and Bendearg met on the pass, one calling on the other to lie down, and the other disregarding the command.

- 1) arch; 2) wayfarer; 3) patrician order; 4) to disregard; 5) summit.

c The Grant refused to lie down at the command of the MacPherson.

- 1) to prostrate; 2) to drive a sword through a body.

d They drew near, and made ready for a hand-to-hand struggle.

- 1) bonnet; 2) precipice; 3) to stretch the limbs; 4) to plant; 5) to knit the eyebrows; 6) onset.

e They stood for a time straining and motionless.

- 1) to grapple; 2) to shift; 3) to strain.

f MacPherson succeeded in whirling Grant into the abyss, where he hung overcome, but still defiant.

- 1) purchase; 2) abyss; 3) brink; 4) gulf; 5) fragment; 6) death-grip;
7) ragged.

g He fell to death below, and MacPherson returned home a changed man.

- 1) to loosen hold; 2) to mangle; 3) heavy; 4) to alter.

h The place is Hell Bridge.

- 1) Gaelic; 2) to enact a tragedy.

98.—FOR A LETTER TO HEAVEN

a The overworked postal clerk looked up into two bright eyes.

- 1) penny; 2) golden head.

b (C) To his snappish question the little girl answered with her request.

- 1) to pluck up courage.

- c Her package brought a strange look into the eyes of the clerk.
1) brown paper; 2) Yule tide; 3) domestic; 4) Harold Newton.
- d The child, interpreting the clerk's pause in her own way, produced two more pennies, and asked him to take it for these.
1) postage; 2) to fumble; 3) wee purse; 4) counter.
- e (C) As soon as the clerk began to explain, the child burst out into her recital.
1) darling; 2) to plead.
- f (C) The clerk's eyes were wet with tears, and the child sobbed out the rest of her sad little story.
1) flaxen-haired; 2) to quiver; 3) angel.
- g The clerk explained as tenderly as he could that it was impossible to send the package to heaven, and a lady standing by began to weep.
1) to break; 2) railroad; 3) pleading; 4) convulsively.
- h (C) The lady's assurance dried the despairing child's tears.
1) parcel; 2) to dance in glee.
- i The lady kept the white lamb.
1) tiny; 2) pink; 3) touching scene.

99.—THE THREE WISHES

- a According to the emperor's command every stranger, eating the second side of the fish, was condemned to death, but allowed to make three demands on the imperial liberality.
1) to serve; 2) to eat to the bone; 3) stretch; 4) imperial clemency; 5) culprit; 6) to pledge.
- b The son of the count, who was thus condemned to die, was accepted in his father's stead.
1) edict; 2) to present one's self; 3) doom; 4) sorrow-stricken; 5) to accord.
- c (C) The young man demanded the emperor's daughter in marriage.
1) demand; 2) priest.
- d This request was granted, and on the morrow the young man demanded the emperor's treasures.
1) to feel bound; 2) to make objection; 3) imprisonment; 4) disposition.

- e He made many friends by his gifts.
1) profusely; 2) host.
- f (C) The emperor in fear asked what was his third demand.
1) early; 2) uncomfortable; 3) out of hand.
- g (C) "Put out the eyes of the accusers."
1) sire; 2) to put out.
- h (C) When at the emperor's command the chamberlain was seized, he accused the steward.
1) chamberlain; 2) steward.
- i When one after another denied having seen the Count eat the second side of the fish, the princess demanded her husband's release.
1) to protest; 2) to implicate; 3) valet; 4) butler; 5) worthy; 6) dense ignorance; 7) Solomon.
- j The emperor granted the request of the princess.
1) to shuffle; 2) to shrug; 3) savagely; 4) courtier; 5) radiant.

100.—KING JOHN AND THE ABBOT

- ✓ The Abbot was justly popular.
1) liberal; 2) velvet; 3) out of gratitude.
- b King John summoned the Abbot to his presence.
1) jealous; 2) to brook the idea.
- c (C) "I will spare thy life on condition that thou answerest me my three questions."
1) realm; 2) to hold state; 3) clemency.
- d The Abbot told his chief shepherd the bad news, and the latter bade the good man to cheer up.
1) to dismiss; 2) greeting; 3) to cheer up; 4) to grant leave; 5) apparel; 6) discomfiture.
- e The shepherd presented himself in the character of the Abbot.
1) to consent; 2) cowl; 3) to accompany.
- f (C) The king asked and was told where the center of the world was.
1) to measure.

- g (C) He asked and was told how long it would take to ride around the earth.
1) shrewd; 2) graciously; 3) sun.
- h (C) He asked and was told what he was thinking about.
1) to let pass; 2) Abbot of Canterbury.
- i The king enjoyed the fellow's wit, and sent him home with presents.
1) nimble wit; 2) right royal.

101.—DEAF AS A POST

- a The gentleman, apparently deaf, paid no attention to the ostler's protestations.
1) winter; 2) traveler.
- b (C) To further protest the gentleman replied with some directions as to his horse's feed.
1) peck; 2) to make the best of one's way.
- c (C) The ostler and the stable-boy exchanged views about the gentleman.
1) fool; 2) deaf.
- d The gentleman insisted with the demurring landlady that anything would satisfy him, and that talk was useless.
1) to lodge; 2) to stun; 3) accommodation; 4) cannon.
- e It was determined to let him pass the night on the chair.
1) to get rid of; 2) to engage.
- f He could not be disturbed from his place at table.
1) to bawl; 2) top; 3) comfortable.
- g The landlady rejected his two francs.
1) hearty; 2) repast; 3) disdain.
- h (C) "I insist on paying."
1) to put in; 2) politeness; 3) to foot the bill.
- i The servant found that, on leaving the company, he took possession of one of the bedrooms.
1) to find one's way; 2) stupidity; 3) to take possession.
- j They heard his soliloquy and his determination.
1) to turn out; 2) to barricade; 3) risk.

- k He was left undisturbed.
1) eavesdropper; 2) to dislodge; 3) to pass.
- l The next morning he explained his conduct, and left.
1) laugh; 2) sou; 3) to wager; 4) louis; 5) to some effect; 6) to spur.

102.—THE WEATHER VANE AND THE POACHER

- a The poacher declared that he had been kept from sleep by the vane which had the number nine pricked on its surface.
1) vane; 2) Frankfort; 3) legend; 4) poacher; 5) to complain sorely; 6) creaking.
- b (C) "If I were free, I would show my accuracy of aim."
1) accursed.
- c He was promised his freedom, if he succeeded.
1) councilor; 2) to fulfill.
- d He succeeded.
1) to load; 2) to punch; 3) well-shaped.

103.—THE DEATH-DICE

- a Prince Frederick decided that the soldiers should throw dice for their lives.
1) Alfred; 2) Ralph; 3) to deny guilt; 4) to extract; 5) to cut the Gordian knot.
- b The event was made notable.
1) pomp; 2) to celebrate; 3) to assist.
- c Ralph made the highest possible throw, and Alfred prayed God to help him.
1) jubilant; 2) to fall on one's knees.
- d By a happy accident, Alfred threw thirteen.
1) die; 2) to split off.
- e All were astonished, and Ralph acknowledged his guilt.
1) to thrill; 2) guilt.

104.—A CURIOUS DECISION

- a The cook demanded of the sweep half the price of a dinner as recompense for the sweet odors he had been inhaling.
1) to regale; 2) victual; 3) sweep; 4) savory.
- b The policeman decided that the sweep should pay the cook by regaling one of his senses.
1) to feast; 2) odor; 3) to make one a recompense; 4) insatiable.
- c (C) The policeman told the sweep to rattle the money which the latter said he had.
1) two pence; 2) to rattle.
- d (C) The sweep did so, and the policeman declared the cook paid.
1) to tickle.
- e The decision did not meet with the same approval from all.
1) by-standers.

105.—THE THREE SLEEPERS

- a Bonn is noted for the laziness of its people.
1) Beethoven; 2) propensity; 3) to prolong.
- b The three young men retired into the cave in order to enjoy a long sleep.
1) somnolence; 2) hardship; 3) to settle; 4) nap.
- c After seven years one awoke long enough to ask a question.
1) to mutter; 2) to bellow.
- d After another seven years the second answered the first.
1) to relapse; 2) oblivion.
- e After a third seven years the third sleeper spoke.
1) unbroken; 2) long drawn; 3) dreamily; 4) to resume.
- f They are said to interrupt their slumbers, even to this day, in the same interesting fashion.
1) to volunteer; 2) thrillingly; 3) witty.

106.—AN OCTOBER SUNRISE

- a I saw the sun rise above the mountains, scattering the clinging mists.
1) woodland; 2) warmth; 3) spread of light; 4) wavering length of upland; 5) dew-fog; 6) to cling subtly; 7) brave lines of the hills.
- b The woods were tinted with the colors of autumn.
1) drapery of awakened mountains; 2) mellow; 3) gold; 4) olive.
- c Light was shed over all, and life woke in all creation.
1) gladsome light; 2) curtain; 3) cloven hoof; 4) crouching hollow; 5) fluttering sense; 6) impress; 7) wings of hope; 8) sprang reassured; 9) merged beneficence.
- d So shall rise the day of the resurrection.
1) eternal morning; 2) crag; 3) chasm.

107.—TRYING OLD PRESCRIPTIONS

- a A crowd gathered round the horse.
1) to balk.
- b A string was suggested, but found useless.
1) ear; 2) remedy; 3) effect.
- c Blindfolding proved equally useless.
1) cabman; 2) bandage.
- d (C) The owner resented the suggestion to back him.
1) to exasperate.
- e An ear of corn was also useless.
1) to budge; 2) to resort to.
- f When the fire blazed up under him, the horse moved forward just five feet.
1) benevolent; 2) to build; 3) excelsior; 4) armful; 5) to curl about; 6) calm survey; 7) blaze; 8) to unbend.
- g Thirty-five dollars worth of damage was done to the buggy.
1) elegant; 2) to occur; 3) to scatter.

- h An old colored man came along, and spoke kindly to the brute.
1) faded suit; 2) brim; 3) to rub; 4) to scorch.
- i The horse trotted off.
1) brisk; 2) head.

108.—A SON OF ADAM

- a The workman, stirred up by the heat, said some hard things about Adam.
1) trench; 2) to suffer intensely; 3) to complain of one's lot; 4) to say hard things.
- b His master said he would do as Adam had done, but the workman was so sure he would not that the master told him to come at noon for a test.
1) to overhear; 2) gruffly.
- c When the workman sat down to dinner at noon, the master bade him not to touch the dish in the center of the table.
1) well-laden; 2) grace; 3) covered dish.
- d The workman at length grew curious about the covered dish.
1) to help one's self; 2) delicious.
- e He lifted the cover, and had to chase a mouse.
1) to hold back; 2) tiny bit; 3) to pop out; 4) to scurry.
- f The master had the laugh on the workman.
1) clatter; 2) wee; 3) hubbub; 4) heartily.

109.—PIERROT, THE FAITHFUL

- a At nine in the morning the ragpicker's donkey stopped short, unable to drag the well-filled cart any farther.
1) to silver; 2) Park Monceau; 3) marquis of the old régime; 4) globe of fire; 5) to veil; 6) to famish; 7) rubbish; 8) skillet; 9) stroke; 10) resignation.
- b To the woman's kindness the donkey spoke with his eyes—a farewell
1) to curse; 2) motherly pity; 3) to do one's best; 4) to die.

- c The woman lifted a basket of bottles out of the cart, and encouraged the donkey, but in vain, to make an effort.
1) Pierrot; 2) to lighten; 3) to put a shoulder to; 4) St. Ouen; 5) wretched; 6) to drag.
- d While she ran into the nearest wine-shop, I examined the donkey more fully.
1) anxious; 2) fearful; 3) Pyrenean dog; 4) tuft; 5) emaciated body; 6) mountain burned bare.
- e The donkey was too weak to eat the bread and sugar.
1) to show; 2) piano keys; 3) strength; 4) to oblige.
- f (C) I found out the cost of the donkey, and offered to buy it on condition that she would retire him in favor of another.
1) retired list; 2) abattoir.
- g They started off together.
1) card; 2) high spirits.
- h (C) The woman came back to me to tell me that the donkey had died on reaching home.
1) hut; 2) to kiss; 3) work.

110.—THE CRITICS SILENCED

- a The artist received unqualified praise from the Elector before the great crowd assembled in the market-place.
1) Düsseldorf; 2) unveiling; 3) John William; 4) masterpiece; 5) to swell with pride; 6) equestrian; 7) Gabriel Gruppello.
- b The jealous courtiers criticised the steed.
1) unwonted; 2) to depreciate; 3) effigy; 4) to take revenge; 5) to disparage; 6) wither; 7) quadruped.
- c The artist's request was granted, and for three days the sounds of his hammer were heard.
1) comment; 2) to entreat; 3) scaffolding; 4) to screen; 5) heavy clang; 6) incessantly.
- d The courtiers complimented themselves, and at the end of the appointed time gathered with the Elector round the statue.
1) to and fro; 2) complacently; 3) hint; 4) suite.

e (C) To the query of the Elector, the critics of the hoofs and neck and ears replied that they were quite satisfied.

1) arch of the neck; 2) strained.

f Each was well satisfied with himself.

1) to praise; 2) timely suggestion; 3) to openly profess.

g After listening in silence, the sculptor boldly spoke their condemnation.

1) downcast; 2) unchanged; 3) bronze.

h (C) "Why then the hammering?"

1) Master; 2) vigorously.

i (C) "I was demolishing the reputation of my critics."

1) to shrug; 2) to demolish; 3) to generously bestow.

111.—THE WITCHERY OF OLD-TIME HOUSES

a There is no place for ghosts in a modern mansion.

1) stylish; 2) garret; 3) attic; 4) to accommodate; 5) to flatten out;
6) nook; 7) to lodge; 8) sealed interval.

b The old houses abounded in creepy things.

1) wainscot; 2) to scamper; 3) to enact a scene; 4) theatrical; 5) slug;
6) misanthropic spider; 7) garish; 8) mold; 9) potato-shoot;
10) haply; 11) cold sweat; 12) sepulchral; 13) heap of bones.

c It had a most unfinished garret.

1) lath; 2) ridge of mortar; 3) bridge; 4) conchoidal; 5) broadaxe;
6) sap.

d It is a region of wrecks.

1) realm; 2) shroud-like cobweb; 3) to be thrown up; 4) to rock;
5) symbol; 6) reel; 7) blear-eyed; 8) to twirl; 9) limbo.

e More can be added to this catalogue.

1) portmanteaus; 2) stranded porpoise; 3) to gape; 4) to gorge; 5) to bulge; 6) repletion; 7) andiron; 8) paltry; 9) fore-stick; 10) backlog; 11) churn; 12) dasher; 13) Salem witches.

112.—DEATH OF SPORUS, THE GLADIATOR

- a The combat of Niger and Sporus drew the attention of the spectators.
1) first interest; 2) fatal; 3) science; 4) antagonist.
- b Niger retreated, attempted a throw, then fled at the top of his speed.
1) caution; 2) fencer; 3) net; 4) to glitter; 5) swordsman; 6) reticarius; 7) gladiator; 8) snare; 9) inflection; 10) rage.
- c Sporus succeeded in wounding Niger, but in an unguarded moment Niger struck him to his knees, and wrapt the fatal net about him.
1) agility; 2) trident; 3) rapidity; 4) caution; 5) point; 6) deadly; 7) mesh; 8) redly.
- d Victor and vanquished looked to the spectators for their decision.
1) to withdraw; 2) to roll; 3) to despair; 4) to glare upon.
- e The signal of death was given, and the headsman walked out and gave the death-stroke.
1) woman's hand; 2) to warm; 3) dogged; 4) fatal; 5) to stalk; 6) dismal; 7) humbled crest; 8) to glitter; 9) to quiver.

113.—JACK HANNAFORD

- a Jack Hannaford came to the farmhouse where dwelt a farmer and his foolish wife.
1) penniless; 2) widow; 3) witless; 4) thick-skulled.
- b The farmer confided to her care ten pounds.
1) market.
- c The wife hid the money.
1) yoke-mate; 2) chimney.
- d (C) Jack Hannaford arrived, and introduced himself as coming from Paradise.
1) to rap; 2) Paradise.
- e (C) On inquiry the woman learned of the wants of her former spouse, and confided to Jack the gold needed to help poor Tom Turpin.
1) to allude; 2) to cobble; 3) stock; 4) fresh supply; 5) parlor.

- f The farmer was soon in pursuit, and Jack made ready to meet him.
1) to return; 2) anger; 3) to waste words; 4) beat of hoofs; 5) to shade.
- g (C) Jack explained the reason of his attitude, and the farmer grew curious enough to imitate him, at which Jack gave further directions.
1) rare; 2) sky; 3) to fly.
- h The farmer saw.
1) to gallop; 2) horseless.
- i (C) "You're the bigger fool."

114.—THE PEDDLER OF SWAFFHAM

- a In the olden days there lived at Swaffham a poor peddler.
1) London Bridge; 2) to line; 3) shop; 4) salmon; 5) arch; 6) Norfolk; 7) to have much ado; 8) to trudge; 9) pack.
- b He made no account of his dream until he had dreamt it three times.
1) to fall out; 2) London town; 3) to make little account of; 4) to try the issue of.
- c At his journey's end he seemed likely not to hear the promised news.
1) weary; 2) to pace to and fro; 3) to yield comfort.
- d (C) On the third day a shopkeeper drew from him the reason of his presence.
1) to tramp; 2) wares; 3) alms; 4) to roam.
- e (C) "Do you think I am such a fool as to go to this unheard-of Swaffham, and investigate the meaning of my dream."
1) bumpkin; 2) orchard; 3) to journey; 4) silly; 5) to get hence.
- f The peddler kept his own counsel, and found the treasure.
1) shrewd; 2) prodigiously; 3) to dig.
- g He was a just rich man, and is honored to this day.
1) duty; 2) pride of wealth; 3) magnificent; 4) townsman.

115.—WHICH WAS THE HEIR ?

- a The jeweler took with him his son and the slave.
1) to carry on a trade; 2) superfluity; 3) to dispose of; 4) to adopt.

- b On the jeweler's death, the slave laid claim to his fortune, and was favored by appearances.
1) issue; 2) pestilence; 3) to possess himself; 4) to this end; 5) pretension; 6) comely; 7) ill-favored; 8) indulgence.
- c The magistrate declared his inability to decide.
1) heirdom; 2) lack; 3) assertion.
- d The judge found a way.
1) to engage; 2) claimant; 3) curtain; 4) to project.
- e The contestant agreed, and an officer stationed himself in readiness.
1) reliance; 2) detection; 3) scimeter.
- f Shortly the judge cried out to strike off the villain's head.
1) debate.
- g At the sign of danger the impostor discovered himself.
1) to brandish; 2) conscious security; 3) to animate.
- h The slave was ordered to be punished.
1) custody; 2) condign.

116.—THE HEROISM OF JOHN BINNS

- a The whole scene comes back to me,—everything, and, most of all, the boy waiting for help.
1) clanging; 2) hoarse; 3) hush; 4) sea; 5) fire-glow; 6) background; 7) ledge.
- b But the help came, and the lad was carried down the scaling ladders to the extension ladder by one of the firemen who had climbed up after him.
1) truck company; 2) stretch; 3) cross-bar; 4) to thrust; 5) crash; 6) dizzy; 7) human fly; 8) recess; 9) span; 10) pent-up; 11) lurid; 12) impotent fury.
- c A pandemonium of joy broke loose.
1) to deafen; 2) to fall on necks; 3) to glisten; 4) to stall; 5) to clutch; 6) Comanche; 7) to relieve one's feelings; 8) a touch of nature that makes the whole world kin.
- d John Binns was rewarded.
1) crew; 2) Bennet Medal.

117.—BETH GELLERT

- a Gellert had been given to Llewelyn by King John.
1) greyhound; 2) lion; 3) chase.
- b Llewelyn had little sport because he hunted without Gellert.
1) horn; 2) call; 3) blast; 4) bold.
- c Master and dog were both surprised on the return of the former.
1) rage; 2) to bound out; 3) to startle; 4) fang; 5) to drip; 6) to crouch.
- d The terrible thought that entered Llewelyn's mind gained confirmation at every step on the way to the nursery.
1) to cross; 2) nursery; 3) disorder; 4) to daub.
- e The prince, not finding the child, slew the dog.
1) frightful; 2) to plunge into; 3) deep yell; 4) eye.
- f Too late Llewelyn discovered the child, and the truth.
1) unharmed; 2) gaunt; 3) to slay.
- g The grave is called Beth Gellert.
1) cairn.

118.—THE DEVIL AND THE ROOSTER

- a The attempt to span the Main with a bridge had been unsuccessful enough to make the builders confide the project to the devil.
1) red sandstone; 2) Frankfort; 3) to span; 4) freshet; 5) to carry away; 6) completion; 7) to mutter.
- b One architect asked the devil's help.
1) worldly-wise; 2) predecessor; 3) to take at one's word; 4) Satanic Majesty; 5) to bespeak.
- c The devil consented on being promised a toll.
1) tender mercies; 2) contract.
- d A long procession was formed to do honor to the opening.
1) magistrate; 2) gala attire.
- e The architect was invited to cross the bridge first.
1) master of ceremonies; 2) modestly; 3) graceful gesture; 4) to pass first; 5) to lead the march.

- f The master of ceremonies was just about to ride forward, when the rooster escaped, and was seized by the claw-like hand.
1) to stammer; 2) to curl; 3) pompous; 4) drum-major; 5) distracted rooster; 6) squawk; 7) to prance; 8) to zigzag; 9) to flutter; 10) cackle; 11) to clutch; 12) imprecation; 13) fumes of brimstone.
- g The people were delighted to hear of the outwitting of the devil.
1) frankly; 2) to be beside one's self; 3) to cheat.
- h They placed a memento on the bridge.
1) memento; 2) golden effigy.

119.—THE NIGHT-STORM

- a A destructive north wind blew up.
1) dismal; 2) bitter storm; 3) to rattle; 4) to creak; 5) to fall crashing; 6) to totter; 7) to reel; 8) to stagger; 9) to rock.
- b Everyone that could be was indoors.
1) to brave the fury; 2) blast; 3) tavern; 4) water-side; 5) uncouth; 6) hearth; 7) to founder; 8) to cluster; 9) goblins; 10) rumbling; 11) pattering; 12) to wail; 13) howl.
- c The May-pole tavern shone cheery, and stood stalwart through it all.
1) ruby; 2) to blend; 3) jovial; 4) bleak; 5) to crunch; 6) to crackle; 7) perfume; 8) sturdily; 9) chafe; 10) to pant; 11) hospitable; 12) to puff defiance at; 13) to drive at.

120.—THE THREE CAKES

- a The carpenter's much-prized tree-trunk was floated to the home of the hospitable man who discovered its value.
1) covetous; 2) to overflow; 3) destination; 4) benefactor; 5) pilgrim; 6) to cleave in twain; 7) to deposit.
- b This man, when he heard the carpenter's tale, determined to see whether the money ought to be restored to its owner.
1) to bitterly lament; 2) quest; 3) host; 4) title; 5) cake.
- c At his host's suggestion the carpenter chose a cake, greedily promising to take another, if he desired it.
1) to weigh; 2) earth.

- d In the presence of the carpenter the host disposed of the money.
1) to restore; 2) varlet; 3) pauper; 4) tribulation.

121.—THE DERVISE AND THE FOUR ROBBERS

- a The four robbers determined to possess themselves of the sheep by strategy.
1) purchase; 2) sacrifice; 3) Dervise; 4) to part company; 5) to accost.
- b The first thief asked him where he had gotten the dog.
1) to contrive.
- c The second and third robbers also asked where he had picked up the dog.
1) quarter; 2) venerable; 3) greyhound.
- d The fourth capped the climax.
1) to put one beside himself.
- e The Dervise, believing himself cheated by the grazier, returned to the city to claim his money, leaving his sheep with the robbers.
1) grazier; 2) conjurer; 3) to bewitch; 4) to give credit to; 5) wether; 6) felon.

122.—CLEARING A MYSTERY

- a The lady advised the nervous gentleman to hide his money in his boots.
1) stage-coach; 2) London; 3) highwayman; 4) guinea; 5) to conceal.
- b The lady invited her accusers to dine with her, promising an explanation of her conduct.
1) purse; 2) to submit; 3) to load with abuse; 4) confederate; 5) appearance.
- c (C) After the feast the lady explained her conduct, and generously reimbursed the gentleman.
1) sumptuous; 2) drawing room; 3) apology; 4) to make amends.
- d The travelers expressed their pleasure.
1) presence of mind.

123.—A TALE OF TERROR

- a We stopped at the cottage of a peasant.
1) companion; 2) peasant; 3) Calabria.
- b Our room was an attic that was used as a store-room.
1) loft; 2) ladder; 3) nest; 4) joist; 5) laden.
- c My companion slept, while I stayed awake.
1) to relight; 2) to finish.
- d I overheard a conversation.
1) dawn; 2) host; 3) to distinguish.
- e I was stricken with terror, and could see no means of escape.
1) marble; 2) to howl; 3) wolf.
- f The climax of my suspense came, when mine host and his wife climbed into the attic.
1) to mount; 2) crack; 3) barefoot; 4) to shade.
- g The man went to the bed, and cut a slice from a ham hanging above.
1) throat; 2) bare; 3) to retire.
- h At breakfast several terrible things were easily explained.
1) hostess; 2) capon.

124.—THE MISCHIEVOUS WIND

- a The wind had no other effect on the fire than to make it burn brighter, and in anger ran away to take revenge on something else.
1) out upon; 2) to bluster; 3) forge; 4) to bang; 5) wicket; 6) to grumble; 7) to bully; 8) bellows; 9) swaggerer; 10) hoarse; 11) gaily; 12) to whiz; 13) surly; 14) howl; 15) cuff; 16) ale-house; 17) blue dragon; 18) rampant; 19) to rear; 20) crazy frame.
- b The wind took after the leaves, and followed them into the wheelwright's.
1) small tyranny; 2) to wreak vengeance; 3) to come up with; 4) heap; 5) to vent one's humor; 6) pell-mell; 7) to whirl; 8) frantic; 9) gambol; 10) malicious fury; 11) to charge; 12) saw-pit; 13) sawdust; 14) to follow at one's heels.

- c The leaves clung wherever they could, but the oddest feat they achieved was to rush into Mr. Pecksniff's door, whither the wind followed with strange results.
- 1) to scare; 2) giddy chase; 3) outlet; 4) to eddy round; 5) eave; 6) hay-rick; 7) to achieve a feat; 8) bat; 9) to cower; 10) hedge; 11) incontinently; 12) twinkling of an eye; 13) boisterous rover; 14) moor; 15) meadow; 16) flat; 17) to make a night of it.

125.—THE PICTURE OF A PHANTOM'S FACE

- a The stranger was moved by the portrait, and his rest was broken as a result of looking at it.
- 1) Lubeck; 2) hospitably; 3) to lodge; 4) apartment; 5) to arrest attention; 6) unearthly; 7) fascination.
- b The master was put out when he heard the guest's story, and explained the presence of the picture.
- 1) to glare; 2) oversight; 3) to part with anything.
- c (C) The master told how his father met the painter.
- 1) coffee-house; 2) Hamburg; 3) to observe closely; 4) to shudder; 5) intimacy; 6) solicitation.
- d (C) "The painter assassinated his former friend."
- 1) familiar terms; 2) to patronize; 3) to fall out; 4) to challenge.
- e (C) "In desperation the painter drew the phantom face, and gave it to my father before his return to Italy."
- 1) fixed eye; 2) to encounter; 3) to stare; 4) mood; 5) specter; 6) phantom visage; 7) conscience-smitten; 8) to surrender to justice.

126.—A WARM JOKE

- a A trickster lost his leg, and found in this another means of making money.
- 1) wit; 2) expense; 3) credulous; 4) to overturn; 5) to amputate; 6) to levy contributions.
- b He soon spent the two hundred pounds.
- 1) to bring action; 2) cork-leg; 3) artificial; 4) to resort to trickery; 5) livelihood.

- c He confirmed the tale of the farmer, and assured his listeners that he could perform the wonder.
1) to provide one's self; 2) rotten wood; 3) public-house; 4) molten; 5) hero; 6) to have about one.
- d (C) He produced, and explained the virtues of his powder.
1) to compound; 2) to melt.
- e (C) They ridiculed the idea, and he agreed to try it on himself.
1) to guffaw; 2) incredulous.
- f When the water was brought, he applied the powder.
1) pail; 2) to steam; 3) stocking.
- g He plunged his leg into the pail, and the farmers stood in wonder.
1) to plunge; 2) tranquillity; 3) to glare.
- h The farmers prevailed on him to part with some of the powder, and next day invited their friends to see the experiment.
1) to yield to entreaty; 2) eagerly; 3) to hasten; 4) to astonish.
- i A vain spectator leaped into the tub.
1) vanity; 2) nimbly.
- j His agony only raised a laugh, and he was left to the care of his wife.
1) shriek; 2) victim; 3) to dance; 4) to convulse; 5) to scald; 6) yokel.

127.—THE CHIMNEY-SWEEPERS' FEAST

- a The origin of the chimney-sweepers' dinner is this.
1) London; 2) superb; 3) metropolis; 4) Montague House; 5) Cavendish Square.
- b When the guilty footman announced the loss of the boy to the distracted mother, every effort was immediately made to find him.
1) country-seat; 2) a-walking; 3) to lose sight of; 4) ale-house; 5) indescribable; 6) bill; 7) goodly reward.
- c The sweep who had been summoned proved to be the lost boy.
1) Lady Montague; 2) ball; 3) town-house; 4) saucepan; 5) to suffocate; 6) vinegar; 7) smelling-bottle; 8) temple; 9) bosom.
- d The story of his abduction was learned.
1) gypsy; 2) donkey; 3) to maltreat; 4) father.

- e The Lady Montague gave a feast to the chimney-sweeps on the first of May to commemorate the event.
1) to reward; 2) handsomely; 3) to preside; 4) to do full justice to; 5) fare.
- f The First of May is still the chimney-sweepers' holiday.
1) grave.

128.—A DUEL BY FRENCHMEN

- a We had a duel.
1) heroic spectacle.
- b Everything was in readiness for action, when doubts arose which called for a postponement.
1) suspender; 2) complication; 3) proxy; 4) hotly; 5) to separate.
- c Another postponement, and only at the third meeting do they go at it.
1) to palpitate; 2) to rekindle; 3) to send forth; 4) to lunge; 5) fencer; 6) thruster; 7) cruel; 8) honor.
- d The damage was slight.
1) eyebrow.

129.—JOHN RIDD ON THE STRAWBERRY MARE, WINNIE

- a Tom Faggus came round the corner.
1) to rush down; 2) hedge; 3) Winnie.
- b (C) Faggus yielded, under protest, to John's request.
1) burden; 2) to be loath; 3) bravest scorn; 4) skull.
- c Tom told the filly to give me a soft fall.
1) filly; 2) to subdue; 3) to draw in the nostrils; 4) soft turf.
- d The mare treated me so kindly that I grew confident enough to urge her.
1) to prick; 2) to mince about; 3) caper.
- e In an instant I knew I was in for it.
1) to plug; 2) shrill; 3) whale-bone.
- f Finding I stuck to her despite her plunging, she raced away.
1) to rear; 2) comb; 3) heaven; 4) wax; 5) "my mettle was up"; 6) to fly.

- g (C) I refused to listen to my sister.
1) to scream.
- h I hung to her, but was very sick at heart.
1) to take the gate at a leap; 2) to knock the words between one's teeth; 3) water-meadow; 4) child at the breast; 5) to feel the earth rushing away.
- i She made me long for death.
1) water-trough; 2) sideways; 3) to leave no breath in one.
- j At the sound of the whistle she carried me home swiftly and gently.
1) shrill; 2) bullet; 3) speed of a swallow; 4) fluent; 5) breeze flitting over the flowers; 6) summer lightning; 7) limp.

130.—FINDING GOLD IN CALIFORNIA

- a The excitement began after the Mexican War.
1) California.
- b Sutter had settled at Sacramento.
1) Missouri; 2) to style; 3) site.
- c He found Western ways slow.
1) log; 2) plank; 3) to grind; 4) roller; 5) slab.
- d Marshall hired Indians to dig the necessary ditch.
1) saw-mill; 2) mill-wheel; 3) great water-wheel.
- e He discovered the gold by accident, and verified the discovery.
1) to course through; 2) pebble; 3) brass; 4) pea; 5) scales.
- f The secret was wormed out of the teamster.
1) whisky; 2) wherewith; 3) grain; 4) to worm out.
- g People came from all parts to reap their fortune in the gold fields.
1) fire in dry grass; 2) to abandon; 3) to lay down; 4) thirst; 5) hunt;
6) gold-seeker.

131.—HOW THE CENTURY PLANT GOT ITS NAME

- a A Russian nobleman brought roots of the maguey to Russia.
1) maguey; 2) eager.
- b The gardener died before he could carry out the Czar's command.
1) attention; 2) to accomplish.

- c The roots lay neglected until one was planted by the second gardener's child.
1) sack; 2) unheeded; 3) to pick out; 4) playful mood.
- d The Czar and this second gardener died.
- e The plant grew slowly and mysteriously
1) spike; 2) to thrive; 3) origin.
- f The new Czar wondered at the strange plant, but died before it bloomed.
1) thick; 2) to bloom.
- g Shortly after the coronation of the next Czar the plant bloomed.
1) coronation; 2) cluster; 3) bud; 4) blossom; 5) to unfold.
- h The gardener had his explanation, and the Court came to admire the plant.
1) honor; 2) to send word.
- i Thus the plant got a new name.
1) exile; 2) sunny sky; 3) to earn.

132.—FEARSOME SIGHTS IN A STORM

- a During the October hurricane strange tales were told, and Captain Sammis came in with a story of a mermaid.
1) to rage; 2) skipper; 3) craft; 4) startling tradition; 5) schooner; 6) Bartley Hope; 7) port; 8) scales; 9) fin.
- b Captain Ade Scidmore had seen two terrible monsters, and others had tales of their own.
1) Fulton Market Fishing Fleet; 2) Sandy Hook light-ship; 3) to rear; 4) plesiosaurus; 5) alligator; 6) paddle; 7) hideous; 8) storm-swept beach.
- c Captain Hank Henderson had the most marvelous story of all.
1) to overtop; 2) marine; 3) mast; 4) to snap.
- d General excitement was the result.
1) shipping circles; 2) white heat; 3) collusion; 4) sea-dog; 5) in flocks; 6) plague; 7) deep; 8) amateur scientist.

e A youth who heard the tales hurried off with information which resulted in a bulletin that destroyed all the romance of the tales.

- 1) Rockaway Beach; 2) to post off; 3) Battery; 4) Herman Kenselman; 5) merry-go-round; 6) carrousel; 7) keel.

133.—THE "EASY MARK"

a The Meadowthorpers looked on Johnnie Keating as one of a far inferior species.

- 1) Hudson River; 2) out of the West; 3) Michigan.

b They tried to sell him some of their broken-down horses, and gave him encouraging odds on the race.

- 1) handicap; 2) to supply liberally; 3) horseflesh; 4) specimen; 5) to hem; 6) to haw; 7) to give odds; 8) to dub.

c Six horses were entered in the race.

- 1) bugle; 2) Major Bastlay's Boadicea; 3) Ralph Gering; 4) Dick Middleton's Bricktop; 5) Tom Halliday's Fleetwing; 6) Dr. Wilcox's Firefly; 7) Martin Follingsby's Graystone; 8) Barrister; 9) to have up; 10) breeding.

d After some delay they got off, Keating doing well.

- 1) hitch; 2) flag.

e In the earliest stage of the race the leaders were Bricktop, Boadicea, Barrister, in the order named.

- 1) polo field; 2) to fight for his head; 3) to make the pace; 4) to take a fence; 5) to rush a wall; 6) to go strongly; 7) well within herself; 8) quarter; 9) pull.

f In the second stage Barrister hung at the quarter of the leader, Boadicea, and the disappointed Meadowthorpers' only solace was the river.

- 1) Higgin's barn; 2) to bolt; 3) to hang at; 4) to negotiate.

g The river left three horses in the race.

- 1) to take off; 2) brook; 3) cat; 4) bird.

h When they came out from behind the grove Barrister was third, but soon regained his place beside Boadicea, making a finish that awoke the admiration of the spectators.

- 1) to intervene; 2) to come strong; 3) to shake out the reins; 4) ar-

row; 5) to creep up; 6) flank; 7) splendid machine; 8) reserve;
9) inch by inch; 10) neck and neck.

i Keating won in the last ten yards.

1) to gallop; 2) to lift forward.

j (C) Explanations followed.

1) to introduce; 2) Grand National; 3) long-drawn sigh.

134.—THE TRIBUTE OF "DE GANG"

a The dead lodger awakened little comment.

1) third floor back; 2) diversion; 3) meager.

b Among the man's effects were found enough to satisfy the landlady,
and a card that served for his identification.

1) out of sorts; 2) in advance; 3) coroner; 4) formality; 5) to soil;
6) to crumple; 7) "Andrew L. Billings, Daily Eagle".

c Billings was remembered as a queer character whose hobby seemed
to be the helping of the poor.

1) staff; 2) spare time; 3) contribution column; 4) hobby.

d The "Eagle" was to pay for his burial.

1) cemetery; 2) twenty-five dollars' worth of decency; 3) generosity.

e A minister and some reporters who had worked with him assembled
in the cold parlor for the funeral.

1) blizzard-like; 2) cheerless; 3) rite; 4) to cower; 5) cheap coffin;
6) to clear the throat.

f Just then a newsboy entered, and was recognized by one of the re-
porters.

1) unkempt; 2) scant; 3) to match; 4) blustery; 5) Nick.

g The boy silently laid his flowers on the coffin.

1) purple; 2) tiny bunch of carnations; 3) to tiptoe; 4) to close
softly.

h The minister read the explanation on the appended card.

1) white cord; 2) stem; 3) to scan; 4) solitary-tribute.

i The minister closed the services briefly and aptly.

1) to reach for; 2) to preach.

135.—THE ADVENTURE OF TILLERMAN McDERMOTT

- a In a little over four minutes after the alarm was given, the men were raising the ladder.
1) St. Patrick's day; 2) to bring to a standstill; 3) slow-moving clouds; 4) red streakings of fire; 5) windlass.
- b Beggin saw the woman's peril, and motioned to McDermott, who in an instant was crawling up to her rescue, having to warn her, as he drew nearer, to sit still.
1) ledge; 2) sheer; 3) flagging; 4) to wave; 5) to drown out; 6) ominous orange glow; 7) dizzy seat; 8) scaling-belt; 9) to wrench; 10) to crook; 11) sill; 12) to plunge; 13) measuring worm; 14) fragment; 15) to hook; 16) sleeve.
- c When he reached the sixth floor, he saw the walls within all ablaze.
1) inner; 2) raging furnace.
- d He took the woman on his shoulder, and descended, with one accident, to the lowest rung, where he waited for McGuire and the extension ladder until the latter cheered him with his voice.
1) conscious; 2) to hold the breath; 3) unanchored; 4) to sway; 5) cotton string; 6) roar of falling walls; 7) to gush out; 8) round; 9) with a snap; 10) tendon; 11) to grapple; 12) to trickle; 13) bow; 14) to break into spray; 15) legs drawn under him.
- e It was a moment of uncertainty.
1) awful; 2) to paralyze; 3) numbness; 4) frail; 5) burden; 6) to dash to death.
- f They did not fall, and to-day McDermott bears the scars of battle.
1) scar; 2) swelling.

136.—“FRECKLES” MCGRAW

- a “Freckles” was William McGraw.
1) official register; 2) State House.
- b “Freckles,” as a reformer, wanted the Kelley bill to pass.
1) legislature; 2) measure; 3) to destine.

- c The Senator explained to the Representative the state of affairs.
1) session; 2) Stacy; 3) Ludlow.
- d "Freckles" heard, and, when Ludlow seemed to be following Stacy, knew a battle was on.
1) lobbyist; 2) doubtful; 3) look of triumph; 4) to make up a plan of campaign.
- e Halfway up he stopped the elevator.
1) basement.
- f (C) "Freckles" began to give frightening answers to the evidently anxious Ludlow.
1) nervous; 2) anxiously.
- g "Freckles" showed some signs of emotion, when he came to the conclusion that it would run.
1) glitter; 2) gray eyes; 3) red spots; 4) freckled cheek.
- h Its flight scared Ludlow.
1) history; 2) to rush past; 3) utter abandonment; 4) blood.
- i (C) "Freckles" would not console the lobbyist even with the thought that the fleeing elevator would not fall.
1) thick with terror; 2) to gasp; 3) shaking voice; 4) to blubber.
- j The elevator ascended almost to the roof.
1) shaft; 2) tower; 3) rickety; 4) to wobble.
- k At "Freckles'" suggestion the lobbyist climbed,—and the elevator began to descend.
1) to pant; 2) eminent; 3) to clamber; 4) to slam; 5) lever.
- l Ludlow knew he had been tricked.
1) dull; 2) smooth; 3) to gull; 4) winding stairway; 5) parapet; 6) flag of distress.
- m When the night boy released him, Ludlow was angry, but it was not from him that the world learnt the story.
1) oil; 2) atmosphere; 3) joke.

137.—THE GREEK STORY OF DELPHI

- a The birth of Apollo filled the earth with joy.
1) to deck; 2) nymph; 3) Delos; 4) Hellas; 5) choir; 6) white swan; 7) to pipe.

- b He wandered up and down and out of Greece and back again.
1) to entrance; 2) Zeus; 3) Olympus; 4) Pieria; 5) Iolcos; 6) Thes-
salian; 7) to take up one's abode; 8) Hyperboreans.
- c He chose the plain of Tilphussa for his temple, but the nymph did not
favor his plan.
1) Copais; 2) well-watered; 3) moss; 4) lily.
- d (C) "This land will attract the spoiler, and is not peaceful even now."
1) spoiler; 2) song of the cicada; 3) din of battle; 4) to give place;
5) herd; 6) to drive afield; 7) plowman; 8) boorish.
- e (C) "Where, if not in this pleasant place, will I settle?"
1) vale.
- f (C) "Go to Parnassus for a place of honor."
1) cleft; 2) to do honor.
- g Apollo built his temple.
1) master-architect; 2) Trophonius; 3) Agamedes; 4) massive;
5) shrine.

138.—A GODDESS BRIDE

- a One morning Peleus saw the beautiful Thetis walking on the shore.
1) purple; 2) Myrmidons; 3) dream; 4) nymph; 5) to weave; 6) Naiad;
7) chaplet; 8) sandal.
- b Peleus was warned by Pallas Athene that this was his predestined
bride.
1) silver-footed; 2) to woo.
- c He went to Chiron to learn how to win his bride
1) blue cloud; 2) Chiron; 3) mountain-top.
- d He captured and held fast the nymph as she changed to various
shapes.
1) to gild; 2) crag; 3) Pelion; 4) sea-washed; 5) to dally; 6) golden
tress; 7) mist; 8) tawny.
- e Peleus won her love, and the gods made ready the banquet hall.
1) leafy; 2) to sport; 3) to sparkle; 4) cavern; 5) vaulted; 6) niche;
7) to polish.
- f That was the grandest wedding-feast mortal man had ever had.
1) immortal; 2) viand; 3) Nereides; 4) Muses; 5) Apollo.

139.—PROMETHEUS

- a Prometheus in pity for their lot gave men fire and many other good gifts.
1) forethought; 2) to scoop; 3) to vary; 4) fennel stalk; 5) Helios.
- b Zeus, who hated men, ordered Prometheus bound upon Caucasus.
1) naught; 2) feeble; 3) burden; 4) to grovel; 5) pent up; 6) peak.
- c Hephaestus unwillingly went with the servants of Zeus to help in doing his bidding.
1) ruthless; 2) bleak; 3) barren; 4) bond; 5) crag.
- d (C) "I bind you to this everlasting torture most unwillingly."
1) loathing; 2) blaze; 3) to scorch; 4) to shimmer; 5) veil.
- e Prometheus sang fearlessly while birds of prey and the elements joined in an effort to torture him.
1) to swoop; 2) scream; 3) grim; 4) to flap; 5) talon; 6) to hurtle down; 7) to topple; 8) to rattle; 9) to eddy; 10) gust; 11) lurid; 12) to crash; 13) to deafen; 14) to blend; 15) turmoil; 16) to whirl; 17) chaos; 18) to quail.
- f After thirteen generations Hercules freed Prometheus.
1) to purge; 2) everlasting; 3) to fetter; 4) naked; 5) to circle; 6) to dig; 7) pæan.

140.—AN UNWILLING HERO

- a A pleasant family group was gathered in the orchard at the foot of Mount Neritus.
1) garb; 2) Anticelia; 3) Penelope; 4) to beam; 5) Odysseus; 6) to dandle; 7) Telemachus; 8) to bud.
- b When Odysseus heard of the purpose of Nestor of Pylos and Palamedes of Euboea, he showed himself unwilling to fulfill his oath.
1) shrewd; 2) Menelaus of Lacedæmon; 3) Paris; 4) Helen; 5) to darken.
- c He suddenly rushed aimlessly to the palace, seeming to recognize neither of the messengers.
1) stride; 2) aimless; 3) footpath; 4) white; 5) greeting.

d Palamedes suspected a trick.

1) wreck.

e He began to plow the beach and sow salt.

1) to make one's way; 2) to yoke; 3) furrow; 4) to strew; 5) grain.

f Odysseus forgot to sham when he saw his child laid in front of his team by Palamedes, and the latter pressed his advantage.

1) with the dawn; 2) Eurycleia; 3) to smile; 4) to trample; 5) maniacal; 6) to hands.

g Odysseus acknowledged gracefully that he had been outwitted, and joined the Grecian forces.

1) to cloud; 2) to outwit; 3) to own.

141.—THE WOODEN HORSE

a In the tenth year of the siege of Troy, when all other schemes had failed, Odysseus suggested a new plan.

1) Trojan; 2) to sit down before a city; 3) starvation; 4) for good and all; 5) to go aboard.

b A host of warriors hid themselves in the wooden horse, while the rest of the Greeks departed.

1) doughty; 2) Pyrrhus; 3) wooded; 4) Tenedos.

c The Trojans, pouring out of the city, listened to Sinon's story, and asked the meaning of the horse.

1) to pour out; 2) relic; 3) to hazard; 4) to lurk.

d Sinon told them the horse was a Greek offering to Athene which would turn to the benefit of the Trojans should they receive it within their walls.

1) Palladion; 2) distant; 3) Calchas, the soothsayer; 4) to revere; 5) to insure.

e The horse was dragged into Troy, to the ruin of the city.

1) artful; 2) to fall upon; 3) torch; 4) to mete out; 5) Tyndareus; 6) blemish.

142.—A WONDERFUL SWORD

a Mimer, unable to make a sword fit to pierce the armor of Amilias, came to his apprentices for help.

1) upstart; 2) Burgundyland; 3) underling; 4) to foil.

- b The other apprentices ridiculed the temerity of Siegfried.
1) to shake; 2) to scorn.
- c After seven days of labor he brought a sword to Mimer.
1) spark; 2) ringing; 3) hissing; 4) to temper.
- d The sword cleft a thread of wool.
1) thistle-down; 2) to glitter; 3) twain; 4) to cleave.
- e On the fourth day, after more working and tempering, the sword split a ball of wool floating on the water.
1) to weld; 2) white-hot; 3) to temper; 4) milk; 5) corn-meal; 6) to sneer; 7) eddy; 8) to whirl; 9) to bare; 10) to ripple.
- f After seven weeks Siegfried again brought the sword to Mimer.
1) smithy; 2) to glow; 3) cheery; 4) haggard.
- g Siegfried split Mimer's anvil with the beautiful sword without dulling the blade in the least.
1) ruddy hilt; 2) rune; 3) to score; 4) to gleam; 5) gathering gloom; 6) lightning's play; 7) whit; 8) Thor.
- h Mimer, holding it in the water, split ten fleeces, and then, proclaiming his confidence, went to meet Amilias.
1) brook; 2) to swirl; 3) cleanly; 4) Balmung.

143.—THE STORY OF SPRING

- a From the North Sea came sweeping in to Siegfried a vessel, and in its prow played a minstrel who told Siegfried he was Bragi.
1) white; 2) to speed; 3) to float; 4) to be wafted; 5) incense; 6) to reef.
- b Siegfried saw that the ship was filled with flowers and birds, for Bragi was bringing spring to the lands of the North.
1) to be laden; 2) to circle; 3) twittering; 4) to wake; 5) to scatter.
- c At the music of Bragi the vessel sped on its course with Siegfried aboard.
1) right; 2) to touch; 3) to leap.
- d Icebergs were melted, and the North winds joined forces with those from the South.
1) Reifriesen; 2) Hoder; 3) to drift; 4) breath; 5) ally.

e At the approach of Bragi the ice of the North-lands was melted, and flowers and grass sprang up everywhere.

- 1) huge; 2) gray; 3) fortress; 4) to play; 5) rivulet; 6) to tumble; 7) gorge; 8) to plunge; 9) to peep; 10) fjord.

144.—A WARRIOR MAIDEN

a To him who excelled her in her three chosen feats, Brunhild would give her hand and kingdom; vanquished contestants had to accept death.

- 1) Valkyr; 2) Isenland; 3) challenge; 4) intrusion; 5) to forfeit.

b Gunther, with Siegfried hidden in the Tarnkappe, came to try for the prize.

- 1) courtyard; 2) Burgundyland; 3) fearful; 4) outcome; 5) peerless.

c Brunhild's armor and weapons were wondrous.

- 1) Libyan; 2) to dint; 3) stroke; 4) lace; 5) stout; 6) sun; 7) span.

d After the trial she confessed herself surpassed by Gunther in hurling the spear.

- 1) to speed; 2) lightning; 3) to bear down; 4) giant; 5) to poise; 6) beam; 7) blunt; 8) cliff; 9) to hurl.

e Brunhild threw a stone of a ton weight and leaped a dozen fathoms.

- 1) huge; 2) head; 3) to swing; 4) to land.

f Gunther, aided by Siegfried, leaped and threw farther, and led away Brunhild, a willing bride.

- 1) to bury; 2) vassal; 3) homage; 4) liege.

145.—GOLDEN HAIR

a Loki, wandering among the mountains, came upon an underground smithy, wonderfully rich, where dwarfs were at work making jewels and gems.

- 1) crevice; 2) cleft; 3) crooked; 4) forge; 5) bellows; 6) vaulted; 7) star; 8) brown; 9) leathern; 10) to smelt; 11) pearl; 12) dew-drop; 13) tear; 14) emerald; 15) leaf; 16) souvenir.

b A lump of gold was drawn, spun, and made into hair which Loki carried to earth and gave to a little girl.

- 1) Ivald; 2) token; 3) to draw; 4) elf; 5) flax; 6) tiny; 7) anvils; 8) chorus; 9) soft; 10) gossamer; 11) golden.

146.—THE STORY OF THE VOLCANO

- a When the gods made up their minds to punish Loki, the mischief-maker hid himself at the foot of the Fanander Cataract, where his pursuers found trace of him.
 1) Asa; 2) to condone; 3) Asgard; 4) to mete; 5) wrongdoer; 6) to whirl; 7) waterfall.
- b When the net missed Loki the first time, Thor suggested to try again.
 1) mesh; 2) to roar; 3) to drag; 4) current; 5) cunning; 6) dead.
- c Loki, seeing no other way, attempted to leap over the net, but was caught by Thor.
 1) weight; 2) to rush; 3) shallow; 4) Aegir; 5) slippery.
- d The gods bound him beneath a smoking mountain, and now, when his wife is emptying the basin of venom, the poisonous drops, which fall on him, make him belch forth fire.
 1) bitter; 2) cavern; 3) to drip; 4) Skade, wife of Niord; 5) hideous; 6) venom; 7) tar-black; 8) to writhe; 9) to shriek; 10) to tremble; 11) to spit; 12) fume; 13) sulphurous; 14) to belch forth; 15) Sigyn.

147.—THE KNIGHT OF THE SWAN

- a All in the castle turned in the direction whence the sound of the bell came.
 1) to halt; 2) to fill; 3) music; 4) battlement; 5) squire; 6) menial.
- b Out of a cloud came the swan and the boat.
 1) waving; 2) weed; 3) ripple; 4) to shelve; 5) mist; 6) silver; 7) angel; 8) gold; 9) scallop; 10) silken; 11) to ravish; 12) song.
- c When the knight landed, the music died away as the swan drew off.
 1) empty; 2) to welcome; 3) to die away; 4) distance.
- d The strange knight was dumb, but Roland found a parchment at his neck.
 1) courteous; 2) to hold converse; 3) ribbon; 4) parchment.
- e The parchment gave the knight's name.
 1) Lohengrin; 2) fief.
- f Charlemagne received him royally.
 1) mantle; 2) crimson; 3) ermine; 4) banquet.

148.—THE WHITE STAG

- a The army and Charlemagne were in despair, when Turpin set himself to prayer.
1) Alps; 2) gorge; 3) ascent; 4) fain.
- b During the Archbishop's prayer the stag appeared.
1) crag; 2) knightly; 3) to drift; 4) wide-branching; 5) sunbeam.
- c (C) "Behold our hope!"
1) sure-footed; 2) steep; 3) to smile.
- d There seemed no hope, but the stag waited.
1) grim; 2) snow-crowned; 3) angrily; 4) lowermost.
- e The stag led the army up and up along the difficult way.
1) bugle; 2) cloud; 3) radiant; 4) to yawn.
- f They came to heights whence behind them they could see France, but before, nothing but rocky crags.
1) solitude; 2) map; 3) speck; 4) desolate; 5) to dishearten.
- g On the eighth day Turpin gave thanks for their deliverance.
1) steep; 2) to toil; 3) to burst; 4) throat; 5) peril; 6) mysterious.

149.—ROLAND'S HORN

- a Roland prized his horn above all his other accouterments.
1) accouterment; 2) sea-horse; 3) tusk; 4) unicorn; 5) to set; 6) to inlay; 7) clear.
- b One day Charlemagne challenged Roland to blow the horn which no one else had been able to blow.
1) workmanship; 2) to issue; 3) Paris; 4) Aix; 5) to split; 6) idle; 7) to bethink.
- c (C) "Try to blow this horn, which has been silent since the time of Charles the Hammer."
1) tourney; 2) valiant; 3) to couple; 4) to deafen; 5) crash; 6) slanderer; 7) Poitiers; 8) lung.
- d Roland blew a note which was so terrible that the king begged him to cease.
1) to roll; 2) forest; 3) country-side; 4) to echo; 5) vibration; 6) folk; 7) heaven; 8) clangor; 9) gesture; 10) to reverberate.

e (C) "Keep the horn to blow only in battle and need."

1) to gainsay; 2) utmost.

f Roland kept the horn till death.

1) to hang; 2) death-song; 3) Valley of Thorns.

150.—CHAINING THE SOUTH WIND

a The great bodies of troops who gathered at the king's command to accompany Astolpho in his expedition against Algeria hesitated when they learnt his destination.

1) desert; 2) liege-lord; 3) Charlemagne; 4) herald; 5) stronghold; 6) countryside; 7) to equip.

b (C) The South Wind will kill us.

1) sand; 2) furnace; 3) scorch; 4) to parch; 5) whirlwind; 6) to bury.

c Astolpho quieted their fears, and flew to the land of the many-minded, fickle South Wind.

1) to quiet; 2) winged; 3) to kiss; 4) bud; 5) blossom; 6) to ripple; 7) to rustle; 8) canebrake; 9) rivulet; 10) ledge; 11) to unlock; 12) curse.

d He found her asleep, and fixed a magic net over the entrance to her cave.

1) heavy; 2) to repose; 3) to hearken; 4) dight; 5) mesh; 6) courser.

e When the South Wind loosened herself from the net, and caught up with the army, it was too late to do it any harm.

1) to dread; 2) sand storm; 3) peak; 4) Atlas Mountains; 5) to rid; 6) to trip; 7) tree-top; 8) to whistle; 9) glen.

151.—THE DEATH OF ROLAND

a When victory seemed assured, the Moors swept down on the Christians, and left but sixty alive.

1) Vale of Thorns; 2) slaughter; 3) Roland; 4) Oliver; 5) Marsilius; 6) to hem in.

b Charlemagne heard the sound of the horn, and turned back with his army.

1) plight; 2) burial; 3) gorge; 4) league; 5) gate; 6) Pyrenees; 7) rear-guard; 8) to befall; 9) to succor.

- c When all but himself and Turpin were slain, Roland blew the horn again.
1) to rage; 2) to bite the dust; 3) to survive; 4) to ooze away; 5) feebly.
- d The pagans made a last attack, and fled at the sound of Charlemagne's trumpets.
1) blast; 2) to answer; 3) to bode; 4) to stretch.
- e Roland carried his friends before the Archbishop, who gave them his last blessing.
1) faint; 2) to lift.
- f When Roland awoke from his swoon, he saw the Archbishop, who had tried to help him, dead beside the rivulet.
1) to swoon; 2) distress; 3) to stagger; 4) to fetch; 5) to totter; 6) rivulet.
- g Roland sat down, and addressed Durandal.
1) death's door; 2) marble; 3) shame; 4) folk.
- h He tried to break the sword, but failed, and died.
1) to smite; 2) to split; 3) glove.
- i Charlemagne buried all the dead on the field save Roland and Oliver and Turpin, whom he carried to Blaye.
1) at the charge; 2) death-strewn; 3) chapel of St. Roman's.

152.—THE QUEST OF THE GRAIL

- a The Grail was guarded by a descendant of Joseph of Arimathea who had to be pure of life.
1) to pierce; 2) relic.
- b The sinning guardian was punished by an incurable wound, and the Grail was withdrawn from sight.
1) pilgrim; 2) to confer; 3) to intrust; 4) frailty; 5) spontaneously; 6) iron age.
- c While Arthur was considering how to carry out the message of Gawain, the Grail was seen at a banquet at Camelot.
1) Merlin; 2) recovery; 3) quest; 4) to achieve; 5) vigil; 6) Pentecost; 7) meat; 8) clap; 9) samite.
- d Breaking silence, Arthur said they should thank God for the favor.
1) mystic; 2) cloud.

- e Most of the knights vowed to seek the Grail.
1) vow; 2) twelve months and a day.
- f As Arthur foresaw, many perished on the quest.
1) to gainsay; 2) sin-stained; 3) to purify.

153.—SIN-STAINED

- a Launcelot entered freely into the castle by the sea until he came to the one closed portal.
1) chasm-like; 2) breaker; 3) to make semblance.
- b When he heard the song, he prayed for some fulfillment of his desires.
1) Holy Grail; 2) to wit; 3) pity.
- c He would have entered, but was bade stay without, and thence viewed the holy thing.
1) clearness; 2) torch; 3) to withdraw; 4) heavy; 5) silver; 6) samite; 7) wax.
- d He forgot himself, and was smitten to the ground.
1) wonder; 2) fire; 3) to smite; 4) visage.
- e He was carried thence, and when to his sorrow he awoke from his pleasant dream, he was told he had seen all that was to be given to him of the Grail.
1) pulse; 2) to waken; 3) marvel; 4) to achieve.
- f When he returned to Camelot, he said more was not for him.
1) to take leave; 2) Guinevere; 3) round table; 4) passing glad; 5) to veil.

154.—SIR GALAHAD AND THE GRAIL

- a When, after many adventures, they came to the wondrous ship, Galahad prayed, and was granted the favor of dying in the hour he wished.
1) Grail; 2) Bohort; 3) Percival; 4) silver; 5) samite; 6) reverence; 7) request.
- b When they were entering Sarras, was wrought the miracle of the man lame ten years.
1) silver; 2) cripple; 3) crutch; 4) to assay.

- c Galahad was made king.
1) to dismay; 2) to wit; 3) to bid; 4) assent; 5) chest; 6) vessel.
- d When Galahad learnt that the man who prayed before the Grail was Joseph of Arimathea, he prayed for death.
1) fellowship; 2) to tremble; 3) to lift.
- e Galahad and the Grail were borne up to heaven.
1) to kneel; 2) to bear; 3) rose; 4) to withdraw.

155.—THE PASSING OF ARTHUR

- a Arthur was wounded to death, killing the traitor Modred.
1) conspiracy; 2) goodly; 3) fellowship; 4) to sunder; 5) accursed;
6) to make at; 7) to smite; 8) liege; 9) helm; 10) Excalibur.
- b Arthur gave Bedivere his orders about Excalibur.
1) Lucan; 2) chapel; 3) to fling.
- c Bedivere hid the sword, and told the king he had seen nothing.
1) pommel; 2) heft.
- d A second and a third time the king sent him on the same mission.
1) to deceive; 2) to spare; 3) temptation; 4) to upbraid; 5) selfsame.
- e He threw it into the lake, where it was caught by an arm.
1) ridge; 2) to plunge; 3) bush; 4) to clutch; 5) to wheel; 6) lightning;
7) to flash; 8) to whirl; 9) arch; 10) streamer; 11) to dip;
12) samite; 13) hilt; 14) to brandish.
- f The lamenting women received the king aboard the black barge.
1) water-side; 2) fast; 3) barge; 4) hood; 5) to shriek.
- g Bedivere turned from Arthur to become a hermit, and Arthur was borne away, and it is said will come again.
1) Avalon; 2) hull; 3) dot; 4) dawn; 5) wailing; 6) to turn; 7) hermit-age; 8) to abide; 9) lowly.

156.—THE PROVING OF A KING

- a In the general distress the Archbishop of Canterbury called upon Merlin to devise some scheme for finding a king.
1) Uther-Pendragon; 2) overlord; 3) realm; 4) seer; 5) woeful.

- b Merlin devised the stone and anvil and sword and its strange device.
1) naked; 2) midway; 3) blue; 4) to glister; 5) hilt; 6) to chase;
7) inlaid.
- c Merlin told the Archbishop that he would be king who drew forth the sword.
1) miracle; 2) to make assay; 3) rightwise.
- d Nineteen kings and sixteen dukes were bidden to try.
1) gentle and simple; 2) quality; 3) herald; 4) trumpet; 5) adventure.
- e Of the contestants some were ashamed, some angry.
1) to bend; 2) blade; 3) to plant.
- f Merlin presented Arthur.
1) to make a mock; 2) to press; 3) yonder.
- g The Archbishop gave leave.
1) comely; 2) to go out.
- h Arthur drew forth the sword, waved it, and replaced it in the sight of all.
1) cube; 2) haft; 3) smoothly; 4) to flash; 5) lightning; 6) face,
7) aforetime.
- i To satisfy all, Arthur four times accomplished the same, and was made king.
1) to have none of; 2) Candlemas; 3) Easter; 4) Pentecost; 5) to anoint; 6) estate.

157.—KING ARTHUR AND THE SABLE KNIGHT

- a After due preparations the conflict commenced.
1) Arthur; 2) Sable Knight; 3) lawn; 4) to dress; 5) spur; 6) flank.
- b The shock of their meeting was terrible.
1) to course; 2) to tremble; 3) earthquake; 4) to crash; 5) thunderbolt;
6) splinter; 7) truncheon; 8) to stagger; 9) address.
- c At the third onset Arthur only saved himself from falling by leaping from his saddle, and was dazed by the blow.
1) to run the course; 2) to hurl; 3) to deliver; 4) girth; 5) to void;
6) to whirl.
- d When he recovered, he forced his opponent from his seat.
1) red; 2) anger; 3) to constrain.

- e They fought with swords until each was all bloody.
1) bull; 2) to foin; 3) to trace; 4) to parry; 5) cante; 6) to hew; 7) to stain.
- f Arthur at last stunned the Sable Knight.
1) to withstand; 2) hilt; 3) to stagger.
- g On his recovery he struck Arthur a heavy blow.
1) dolorous; 2) to cleave; 3) brain-pan.
- h The Sable Knight called on the wounded Arthur to surrender.
1) to swim; 2) to commingle; 3) lather; 4) sorely.
- i Arthur stood ready, after throwing his adversary to the ground, to give the deathblow.
1) sword-belt; 2) thigh; 3) to bereave; 4) to unlace; 5) helm; 6) misericordia.

158.—EXCALIBUR

- a Arthur and Merlin came upon a plain.
1) seer; 2) bedight; 3) conceive.
- b Arthur felt he had come into a land of enchantment.
1) gold; 2) fragrance; 3) to ravish; 4) silver; 5) border; 6) hollow; 7) to push.
- c As Arthur pondered how to get the wonderful sword which he saw before him, a lady drew near.
1) margin; 2) samite; 3) wrought; 4) to carve; 5) hilt; 6) to glisten; 7) star; 8) tall flower; 9) to bloom.
- d The lady, who looked like an ivory statue clad all in green, promised to help Arthur achieve the sword.
1) wax; 2) black; 3) jewel; 4) silk; 5) cord; 6) to achieve.
- e At the sound of her whistle a wonderful boat appeared.
1) girdle; 2) to carve; 3) brass; 4) swan; 5) silver thread; 6) glass.
- f Merlin and the Lady of the Lake watched Arthur as he moved away.
1) to enter; 2) bank.
- g Arthur watched his approach to the sword.
1) to uplift.
- h He took the sword.
1) to reach forth; 2) scabbard; 3) belt.

- i Arthur, after saluting the Lady as courtesy required, rode away with Merlin and the sword.
1) thanks; 2) war-horse; 3) palfrey; 4) to expand.

159.—A BATTLE ON STILTS

- a Among other things done for the amusement of Marshal Saxe was a battle on stilts.
1) Low Countries; 2) Namur; 3) stay; 4) to do honor.
- b Stilts are used for both business and pleasure by the people of Namur.
1) to be well used to; 2) low; 3) overflow; 4) slim.
- c The young men fought as opposing armies.
1) flags flying; 2) trumpets blowing.
- d The assault was limited to an attempt to throw the opponents from their stilts.
1) club; 2) fist; 3) elbow; 4) to kick.
- e The battle lasted for an hour or two, and was abetted by wives and sisters.
1) to advance; 2) to retreat; 3) warrior; 4) hand-clapping; 5) to hasten to the assistance.
- f It was rough, but rarely dangerous sport.
1) combatant; 2) to depend; 3) sore.
- g Marshal Saxe remarked the fierceness of the contest.
1) fury; 2) butchery.

160.—THE LEGEND OF BOMERE POOL

- a Few of the sinful inhabitants of the village were turned from their wicked ways by the prayers of the old priest.
1) hollow; 2) mere; 3) wicked race; 4) idolatrous; 5) Thor; 6) Woden; 7) mockery; 8) to laugh to scorn; 9) skirt; 10) cassock; 11) to pelt; 12) to dismay; 13) rivulet.
- b The warning of the old priest was met with shouts of derision.
1) December; 2) to swell; 3) fuel; 4) barrier; 5) peat; 6) channel; 7) superfluous; 8) to croak; 9) kill-joy.

- c Shortly after the beginning of the midnight Mass the whole village was submerged.
1) heathen; 2) revelry; 3) to usher; 4) stormy; 5) torrent; 6) deafening roar; 7) Sanctus bell; 8) bell-cot.
- d The bell is still heard.
1) to sail; 2) to toll.

161.—THE DEATH OF MARY STUART

- a Queen Mary advanced with all her former majesty, and even at the scaffold refused assistance.
1) Pawlet; 2) Drury; 3) Earl of Shrewsbury; 4) Kent; 5) Scottish; 6) Melville; 7) to offer one's arm.
- b A last chance was offered, and refused, and Mary prayed.
1) Dean of Peterborough; 2) to persist; 3) circuit; 4) Latin; 5) Book of Psalms; 6) afflicted; 7) Church; 8) James; 9) Elizabeth; 10) popish; 11) trumpery.
- c Not the maids but the executioners prepared her for the execution.
1) perquisite; 2) to remonstrate; 3) groom; 4) lamentable; 5) to solicit.
- d Mary was blindfolded, led to the block, and executed.
1) Kennedy; 2) to disconcert; 3) headsman; 4) to sever; 5) to convulse.
- e The fanatical exclamations of the Earls received no response.
1) to subjoin; 2) fanatical; 3) to absorb.

162.—THE DEMONIAK

- a Juba discovered a strange power within him, but could not rid himself of it.
1) demoniac; 2) flinty; 3) tunic; 4) shred.
- b The tyrannizing power uttered blasphemies which Juba himself loathed.
1) conception; 2) bravado; 3) loathing; 4) to tyrannize.
- c Even the wild beasts feared him.
1) preternatural; 2) to prowl.
- d He slew a beast of prey, and sucked its blood.
1) draught.

- e He comes upon the rustic celebration, destroys the idol, and escapes.
1) rustic; 2) Pan; 3) hideous; 4) to caper; 5) to lap; 6) mingled blood and dust.
- f The Christian Bishop passes Juba, and calls him.
1) Cæcilius; 2) Victor; 3) dark road; 4) sudden cry; 5) tall form; 6) remarkable figure.
- g Juba hesitated, but at last approached, and rebuked Cæcilius.
1) hypocrite; 2) hound of a priest.
- h The bishop made the sign of the cross, and commanded him to come.
- i Juba obeys, but threatens to destroy the Bishop, yet at the sign of the cross follows.
1) savage wolf; 2) to stand one's ground; 3) to quail; 4) manifest antagonism.

163.—THE PLAGUE OF THE LOCUSTS

- a The sound from the cloud announced the locusts.
1) plague; 2) harsh; 3) shrill; 4) whizzing; 5) portent.
- b This army, with its furlong square of vanguard, could be stopped by nothing.
1) compact body; 2) vanguard; 3) from front to rear; 4) copse; 5) olive woods; 6) orangery; 7) palm plantation; 8) deep forest; 9) stubble; 10) lavish of lives.
- c They destroyed the food of rich and poor.
1) harvester; 2) lodging; 3) far-famed; 4) African; 5) Roman populace; 6) beforehand; 7) glutton invaders.
- d They destroy all the magnificence of Sicca, and pass on.
1) Sicca; 2) to surmount; 3) parapet; 4) luxurious chamber; 5) forage; 6) rioters; 7) array; 8) gilding; 9) triclinium; 10) viand; 11) mysterious instinct; 12) aught; 13) reckless; 14) strong of appetite; 15) certain of conquest.
- e They die in loathsome swarms outside the city, and cause a plague.
1) steaming underwood; 2) green swamp; 3) sheltered valley; 4) hideous; 5) to issue.
- f The country folk seek refuge in the city, but in vain.
1) overseer; 2) quarantine; 3) hovel.

164.—THE VILLAGE PREACHER

- a The preacher, caring little for the vanities of the world, lived in a modest mansion.
1) copse; 2) garden; 3) wild; 4) shrub; 5) passing rich; 6) to fawn; 7) doctrine; 8) to raise the wretched.
- b Vagrants found shelter at his fireside, and pity at his hands.
1) vagrant train; 2) to chide; 3) wandering; 4) beggar; 5) spendthrift; 6) broken soldier; 7) guest; 8) vice; 9) charity.
- c With a heart full of love, he tried to allure his fellows to better lives.
1) to relieve; 2) duty; 3) to watch and weep; 4) to pray; 5) to feel for all; 6) new-fledged offspring; 7) brighter world.
- d He was a comfort to the dying.
1) bed; 2) parting life; 3) sorrow; 4) guilt; 5) pain; 6) despair; 7) struggling soul; 8) faltering accent.
- e He was a holy man, commanding respect in the pulpit, and winning love out of it.
1) meek; 2) zeal; 3) rustic; 4) lore.

165.—THE CASHIER

- a The choleric cashier belonged to the race of beaux.
1) Evans; 2) Cambro-Briton; 3) choleric complexion; 4) sensible; 5) powdered and frizzed out; 6) Maccaronies.
- b His haunted imagination cleared up as the day passed.
1) melancholy; 2) gib-cat; 3) counter; 4) defaulter; 5) hypochondry; 6) neck of veal; 7) Anderton's coffee-house; 8) meridian of animation; 9) hour of tea and visiting.
- c Parlor gossip was his forte.
1) rap; 2) bachelor; 3) chirp; 4) Pennant; 5) London; 6) Rosamond's pond; 7) Mulberry Gardens; 8) Hog Lane; 9) Cheap.

166.—DAVID AND GOLIATH

- a Unaccustomed to armor, David preferred to meet the Philistine in shepherd's attire.
1) Saul; 2) garment; 3) helmet; 4) coat of mail; 5) staff; 6) smooth stone; 7) scrip.

- b The Philistine, meeting David, showed his contempt.
1) to draw nigh; 2) armor bearer; 3) ruddy; 4) comely; 5) dog.
- c (C) Confident in the Lord, David prophesied that he would conquer and give over the Philistines to slaughter.
1) sword; 2) shield; 3) Lord of Hosts; 4) Israel; 5) carcass; 6) bird of the air; 7) beast of the earth.
- d David killed Goliath with his sling.
1) forehead; 2) to fall upon one's face.
- e He cut off his head with the captured sword.
1) to prevail over; 2) to stand over; 3) to draw out; 4) sheath.
- f The victorious Israelites pursued the Philistines.
1) champion; 2) Israel; 3) Juda; 4) Accaron; 5) Saraim; 6) Geth;
7) to fall wounded.

167.—THE HALL FARM

- a As the rustic gate hanging from its stone pillar is never opened, we will look at the house through the bars.
1) hemlock; 2) stone-built; 3) carnivorous affability; 4) coping;
5) grassy inclosure.
- b In the old house of lichen-covered brick we remarked the patched windows and the splendid door which is never opened.
1) powdery lichen; 2) irregularity; 3) companionship; 4) sonorous;
5) liveried lackey; 6) carriage and pair.
- c The house would seem deserted were it not for the barking of dogs and the bleating of calves.
1) chancery suit; 2) booming bark; 3) gorse-built hovel; 4) silly;
5) reference.
- d In imagination we inspect the curious contents of the room.
1) trespasser; 2) impunity; 3) clothes-horse; 4) pillion; 5) mutilation;
6) to bear a strong resemblance to.
- e It is the residence of a former country squire.
1) watering place; 2) genteel; 3) resonant; 4) focus; 5) to radiate.

168.—THE TOURNAMENT

- a The crowd were expectant as Bois-Guilbert and Ivanhoe entered the lists.
1) lists; 2) to strain; 3) to terminate; 4) encounter; 5) spectator.
- b The combatants closed in the center of the lists; but neither was unhorsed.
1) champion; 2) to close; 3) thunderbolt; 4) to burst into shivers; 5) address of the riders; 6) to glare; 7) vizor; 8) attendant.
- c The applause of the spectators died away into silence before the second onset.
1) acclamation; 2) to attest; 3) to grace; 4) to resume; 5) station.
- d At a sign from Prince John the trumpets sounded the onset.
1) combatant; 2) truncheon; 3) dexterity; 4) to recover.
- e As Ivanhoe struck Bois-Guilbert, the latter's saddle girth burst.
1) antagonist; 2) to reel; 3) career; 4) irresistible; 5) to render; 6) reputation; 7) to chance.
- f The marshals prevented the enraged Templar from using his sword.
1) to extricate; 2) stirrup; 3) steed; 4) to unsheathe; 5) to spur; 6) species.

169.—THE HALL OF CEDRIC THE SAXON

- a The great hall, with its folding doors, and thatched roof, was blackened with smoke.
1) disproportioned; 2) rafter; 3) clanking; 4) clumsy; 5) vent; 6) low-browed hall; 7) to incrust; 8) implement.
- b The dining hall was arranged in Saxon simplicity.
1) to pique one's self; 2) flooring; 3) dais; 4) distinction; 5) scarlet; 6) transversely; 7) domestic; 8) antique; 9) massive; 10) settle; 11) canopy; 12) dignitary.
- c The hangings and carpets were gaudily embroidered, though the lower hall was uncarpeted.
1) to adorn; 2) tapestry; 3) brilliant; 4) range of table; 5) rude.
- d Two elevated chairs were provided for the master and mistress.
1) to preside; 2) hospitality; 3) to signify; 4) curiously; 5) inlaid; 6) distinction.

170.—CEDRIC THE SAXON

- a The irascible Cedric was powerful, well built, and not gray, though almost sixty years old.
1) frank; 2) choleric; 3) middle stature; 4) broad-shouldered; 5) long-armed; 6) powerfully made; 7) chase; 8) lodge; 9) hasty temper; 10) to assert; 11) invasion; 12) upon the alert; 13) yellow hair.
- b He was clad in Saxon fashion, rich but almost barbaric.
1) forest green; 2) furred; 3) ermine; 4) doublet; 5) a close dress of scarlet; 6) to sit tightly; 7) sandal; 8) peasant; 9) to secure; 10) golden-clasped; 11) to stud; 12) to dispose; 13) perpendicular.
- c His scarlet cloak, matching his cap, was thrown over the chair against which his boar-spear leaned.
1) richly embroidered; 2) opulent landholder; 3) to go forth; 4) boar-spear; 5) to recline; 6) staff; 7) chance.

171.—LEAR

- a Lear determined to divide his kingdom, giving the greatest part to the daughter that loved him most.
1) grown old; 2) to bestow in marriage; 3) to ask solemnly; 4) warmth of affection.
- b The eldest expressed love for him greater than for her own soul, and received her share; in like manner Regan, but Cordelia expressed her honest love for him.
1) Goneril; 2) eldest; 3) weakness; 4) to make answer; 5) above her soul; 6) declining age; 7) hitherto; 8) best beloved; 9) solid purpose; 10) virtuous answer.
- c Cordelia again expressed less than her real love, wherefore the kingdom was divided between the other daughters, and she married a French Prince.
1) to persist; 2) to recall; 3) to restrain her expression; 4) to reverence.

- d King Lear tried to live with Goneril and Regan, in turn, but was refused, and sought Cordelia to confess his injustice.
1) to complain; 2) to resent; 3) affront; 4) to betake himself; 5) to soothe wounded pride; 6) retinue; 7) to take his journey; 8) kind consideration; 9) recompense.
- e Cordelia heard of his coming and of his condition, and sent servants to have him properly clad.
1) sad condition; 2) filial tears; 3) forlorn; 4) to convey; 5) abode.
- f Cordelia went in state to meet him, and by means of her husband's army set him on the throne, and three years after succeeded him.
1) in state; 2) honorable reception; 3) to prosper; 4) consort.

172.—THE PRODIGAL SON

- a The younger of two sons asked, and received his patrimony.
1) portion of substance; 2) to fall to me; 3) to divide unto.
- b This son went away, squandered his fortune, and was reduced to the lowest condition of life.
1) abroad; 2) riotously; 3) mighty famine; 4) to cleave to a citizen; 5) fain; 6) husk.
- c He recalled his happy home, and resolved to return and acknowledge his sin.
1) to return to himself; 2) to abound with bread; 3) to perish.
- d He returned, and was received with great rejoicing.
1) to rise up; 2) a great way off; 3) moved with compassion; 4) to fall upon one's neck; 5) the first robe; 6) to make merry.
- e The eldest son returning from the field, and hearing what had happened, was angry.
1) to draw nigh.
- f The father told his angry son that all at home was his, and gave an explanation of the rejoicing.
1) to entreat; 2) to transgress; 3) to devour one's substance; 4) harlot; 5) fit; 6) to come to life.

173.—THE CLOUD

- a I bring weal and woe to leaves and flowers and plains.
1) to thirst; 2) to rock; 3) breast; 4) to wield the flail; 5) to lash.
- b Basking in heaven's smile, I sleep on my white pillow, while my pilot ranges far, and dissolves in rain.
1) to sift; 2) aghast; 3) arm; 4) skyey; 5) to fetter; 6) pilot; 7) to lure; 8) purple sea; 9) genius; 10) rill.
- c At morn, like an eagle, the sun rides on my rack, and at evening I rest on my airy nest.
1) sanguine; 2) meteor; 3) plume; 4) crag; 5) ardor; 6) crimson pall; 7) brooding dove.
- d Sometimes the moon breaks the roof of my tent, and then the stars show above me in the skies and below me in the streams.
1) orbèd maiden; 2) white fire; 3) fleece-like; 4) woof; 5) to peer; 6) swarm of golden bees; 7) rent.
- e After obscuring sun and moon, and covering all the sky at my will, I march through my triumphal arch.
1) burning zone; 2) girdle of pearl; 3) to reel; 4) to unfurl; 5) column; 6) million-colored; 7) sphere-fire.
- f I have many shapes, but I never die.
1) nursling; 2) pose; 3) cenotaph; 4) cavern.

174.—THE CULPRIT FAY

- a Clad in his armor, gathered from thistle and bug, the culprit fay mounted his firefly steed, and rode away.
1) plumed; 2) corslet plate; 3) mingled dies; 4) the quivering lance; 5) to brandish; 6) to bestride; 7) to skim the heavens; 8) fiery trail.
- b He enjoyed the clear moonlight and starry heavens, but made no stop till he came to the bank of the milky-way, where he halted to watch the shooting planets.
1) starry plain; 2) cooling breath; 3) elfin; 4) courser.

- c The sylphs surround the fay, and lead him and his steed to the palace of their queen.
1) to weave the dance; 2) warblings wild; 3) clouds of amber; 4) resplendent; 5) spiral columns; 6) the morning's rosy blush; 7) feathery fleece.
- d The fay is entranced by the sylphid queen, clothed in her mantle of gold and jewels.
1) rainbow; 2) the purple rolled at twilight; 3) threads of dawning gold; 4) sparkling star; 5) beamlet; 6) welkin blue; 7) dewy even.
- e The queen ordered a sable car for the fay, and bade him fly to the north, where a star would soon fall.
1) to hover; 2) fiend of upper air; 3) shadowy shroud; 4) verge; 5) northern sky.
- f The fay speeds on till he reaches the northern plain.
1) wings of the blast; 2) the cloudy wain; 3) flickering star; 4) rocket-light.
- g The star rocks, and trembles, and grows dim, but finally bursts forth in flame, and shoots across the heavens.
1) vault of heaven; 2) summer gale; 3) fitful; 4) rayless beam; 5) storm spirit; 6) sheeted sky.
- h The elfin, protected by the sylphid charm, gallops unhurt into the shower of fire, catches a glimmering spark, and speedily returns with it to the fairy ground.
1) as swift as the wind; 2) cloud fiend; 3) flake; 4) lightning's speed; 5) midnight dark.

175.—PARADISE AND THE PERI

- a A Peri, looking in at the gate of Eden, mourned her loss.
1) Peri; 2) Eden; 3) disconsolate; 4) portal; 5) recreant race; 6) glorious.
- b The angel at the gate beheld her, and was moved.
1) angel; 2) to behold; 3) to draw near; 4) tear-drop; 5) to glisten; 6) eyelid; 7) fountain.

- c (C) The angel told the Peri that she might obtain pardon by bringing Heaven's dearest gift to the gate.
 1) nymph; 2) gently; 3) book of fate; 4) Peri; 5) to forgive; 6) heaven; 7) to redeem; 8) sin.
- d On hearing this, the Peri fled.
 1) comet; 2) fleeter; 3) starry; 4) brand; 5) to fling; 6) daring; 7) empyreal height; 8) blue vault.
- e At the sound of the vesper bell, the Syrian boy knelt, facing the South, to say his prayers.
 1) hark; 2) vesper; 3) Syria; 4) minaret; 5) fragrant; 6) sod; 7) to lisp; 8) cherub; 9) God; 10) Paradise; 11) to stray.
- f The wretched, sinful man at his side was moved to tears of repentance at sight of the boy's piety.
 1) to recline; 2) memory; 3) strife; 4) blessed; 5) haply; 6) aim; 7) to weep.
- g (C) The Peri mused that the tear of repentance had power to heal the disease of sin like some magic drop that fell from the moon.
 1) June; 2) Egypt; 3) feeling; 4) balmy; 5) contagion; 6) to descend; 7) to reanimate; 8) foul; 9) plague; 10) to dispel.
- h A light fell upon the repentant sinner which the Peri knew was a smile from the angel of Paradise.
 1) golden orb; 2) to linger; 3) meek; 4) to dew; 5) northern flash; 6) meteor; 7) to enrapture; 8) to hail; 9) harbinger.
- i (C) The Peri, having now won Heaven, said a joyous farewell to this earth.
 1) joy; 2) to win; 3) odor; 4) vanishing; 5) wreath; 6) Alla; 7) forever.

176.—THE VISION OF MIRZA

- a I surveyed the bridge, which now consisted of a hundred arches, though at one time there had been a thousand.
 1) leisurely; 2) to consist; 3) score; 4) arch; 5) flood; 6) ruinous.
- b I noticed a great many trap-doors in the bridge, through which many passengers were falling.
 1) attentively; 2) passenger; 3) examination; 4) trap-door; 5) to tread upon; 6) pitfall.

- c Some few people walked along the broken arches, but soon fell.
1) to continue; 2) to hobble; 3) spent.
- d I gazed upon the varied crowd with deep melancholy.
1) contemplation; 2) structure; 3) melancholy; 4) mirth; 5) jollity;
6) posture; 7) speculation; 8) to stumble; 9) to glitter;
10) scimiter.
- e On the other side of the bridge I saw an ocean dotted with beautiful inhabited islands, and I longed to get to them.
1) ocean; 2) adamant; 3) innumerable; 4) interwoven; 5) habit;
6) harmony; 7) perception; 8) gates of death.
- f These islands are the abodes of good men after death.
1) mansion; 2) to excel; 3) to distribute; 4) relish; 5) perfection;
6) respective.

177.—THE STORM

- a As we approached the sea, we became more and more aware of the dreadful wind that was lashing the water inland.
1) to struggle; 2) to blow dead on shore; 3) terrific; 4) shower; 5) Yarmouth; 6) puddle; 7) breaker; 8) horizon; 9) interval; 10) abyss.
- b I staggered down to look at the sea.
1) to stagger; 2) to strew; 3) seaweed; 4) slates; 5) beach; 6) to lurk.
- c The fury of the advancing and receding waves seemed to threaten an upheaving of all nature.
1) tremendous; 2) agitation; 3) to tumble; 4) to engulf; 5) hoarse;
6) to scoop out; 7) billows; 8) fragments; 9) wrath.

178.—GULLIVER IS CARRIED TO LILLIPUT

- a Skilled in mechanics, the Lilliputians have contrived several clever machines.
1) Lilliputians; 2) mathematics; 3) perfection; 4) fixed on wheels;
5) carriage; 6) men-of-war; 7) wood; 8) timber; 9) engine.
- b After many gigantic efforts, Gulliver was finally lodged in the largest vehicle they could prepare, and drawn off to the metropolis.
1) carpenter; 2) engineer; 3) frame of wood; 4) inch; 5) foot-

6) wheels; 7) difficulty; 8) pole; 9) cord; 10) pack-thread; 11) hook; 12) body; 13) leg; 14) pulley; 15) sleep; 16) soporiferous medicine; 17) horse.

- c After a long journey, during which a ridiculous accident occurred, they came near to the city's gates.
 1) journey; 2) carriage; 3) to adjust; 4) nature; 5) curiosity; 6) officer of the guard; 7) half-pike; 8) march; 9) torch; 10) bow; 11) arrow; 12) emperor; 13) to mount upon.

179.—ROBINSON CRUSOE DISCOVERS THE FOOTPRINT

- a Surprised at seeing a footprint on the shore, I fled home in terror.
 1) apparition; 2) impression; 3) to observe; 4) fancy; 5) fluttering; 6) confused; 7) affrighted; 8) unaccountable.
- b I entered my hut in the greatest haste.
 1) to pursue; 2) ladder; 3) to flee to cover; 4) retreat.
- c How strange that I should be afraid of a human footprint, after I had so long sighed for human company.
 1) checker-work; 2) Providence; 3) affection; 4) apprehension; 5) to exemplify; 6) to banish; 7) to circumscribe; 8) salvation; 9) to bestow.
- d On examining the footprint a second time, and finding that it could not be my own, I concluded that there were people on the island and was filled with new terror.
 1) bold; 2) to persuade myself; 3) similitude; 4) evidently; 5) thereabouts; 6) agree; 7) to inhabit; 8) security; 9) ridiculous; 10) resolution.

180.—STORM AT SEA

- a All was in repose save the clouds and the rustling wind.
 1) sable pall; 2) clump; 3) giant plume; 4) to creep; 5) trail.
- b Whither go the clouds and the wind?
 1) eagerly; 2) guilty spirits; 3) to repair; 4) conference.
- c On the ocean the blasts are lashing the waters into fury.
 1) cramped; 2) waste of water; 3) to shriek; 4) cavern; 5) to rush; 6) unchecked; 7) to buffet; 8) raving.

- d Through the mad confusion of the billows is heard the cry, "A ship".
1) heaving; 2) to spout; 3) to whiten; 4) clamorous; 5) wild cry;
6) constancy; 7) incessant.
- e The trembling ship comes on through the storm.
1) gallant; 2) timber; 3) curling billow; 4) hollow; 5) fury.
- f The ship defies the fury of the waves all night long.
1) mariner; 2) to start up; 3) to surge; 4) moaningly; 5) multitude;
6) thick and fast; 7) untiring; 8) to bear down upon; 9) hull;
10) to peer; 11) unfathomable.

181.—THE BURNING OF NEWGATE

- a The mob started a bonfire with the jailer's furniture at the prison gate.
1) to besiege; 2) jailer; 3) fragment; 4) pitch; 5) resin; 6) turpentine;
7) joist; 8) infernal; 9) blazing tow.
- b Though the heat was intense and many fainted, the men kept feeding the flames.
1) to parch; 2) to crumble away; 3) window sash; 4) to blister; 5) incautious; 6) eaves; 7) to slacken; 8) to keep aloof; 9) to swoon;
10) unendurable.
- c The door began to yield.
1) hinge; 2) upright; 3) gap; 4) to descry; 5) cavernous.
- d As the jail could hold out no longer, the inmates tried to escape.
1) fiercely; 2) to shield; 3) readiness; 4) to crawl; 5) officer.
- e The door fell.
1) to settle; 2) cinders; 3) to totter; 4) to yield.

182.—THE DEATH OF BILL SIKES

- a No sooner had Sikes entered the house than a loud knock was heard.
1) to burst into; 2) hoarse murmur; 3) to quail.
- b The furious mob tried to get at the murderer.
1) infuriated; 2) murderer; 3) to roar; 4) ladder; 5) sledge-hammer;
6) torch; 7) impotent; 8) execration; 9) crevice.

- c (C) The murderer demanded a rope for his escape.
1) ditch; 2) to clear off; 3) to kill.
- d Appearing on the roof with a rope, the murderer attracted the attention of the crowd below.
1) panic-stricken; 2) to select; 3) to emerge; 4) to proclaim;
5) throng; 6) to put around.
- e Sikes, having fastened the rope to the chimney, prepared to let himself down.
1) energy; 2) risk; 3) to protrude; 4) noose; 5) knife.
- f The murderer uttered a yell of terror.
1) loop; 2) previous; 3) armpits.
- g He fell, and the noose, tightening about his neck, choked him.
1) parapet; 2) bowstring; 3) jerk; 4) convulsion; 5) to hang;
6) to quiver; 7) lifeless.

183.—JOHN TIPP

- a John Tipp contentedly considered himself a great accountant.
1) to pretend to; 2) to care a fig; 3) accountant.
- b His hobby was to gather in his suite of rooms a small crowd of singers and musicians, and to improvise concerts with them.
1) hobby; 2) Orpheum; 3) lyre; 4) suite; 5) clarionet; 6) Lord Midas.
- c At his desk, however, Tipp was entirely engaged with his accounts.
1) romantic; 2) dividend warrant; 3) balance; 4) farthing.
- d His character and actions were formal.
1) executor; 2) executorship; 3) spleen; 4) ratio; 5) tenacity.
- e Tipp's timidity showed itself in many small details, but it was all owing to his desire for self-preservation.
1) self-preservation; 2) temperament; 3) "Fortinbras"; 4) parapet;
5) water-party.

184.—THE CHARIOT RACE

- a To the peal of the trumpet the ten charioteers dashed forward.
1) amphitheater; 2) to forge to the front; 3) to plunge.
- b In the seventh dash, the Aenean's steeds crashed into the Lybian's

chariot, and, as the two cars went down, six oncoming chariots were piled on top of them.

1) Aenean; 2) Lybian.

c The Athenian and Orestes escaped the wrecked mass, and side by side raced down the course.

1) spurt; 2) flying mares.

d Orestes' wheel struck the pillar, the axle snapped, the chariot crashed to pieces, and the horses dragged the mangled body down the course.

1) wheeling; 2) to snap.

e Orestes' attendants finally caught the steeds, but the body was too badly mangled to be recognized.

1) to sicken; 2) demeanor; 3) wreckage.

185.—A HIGHLAND EXECUTION

a The messenger who had brought the summons to the trysting, and who had been kept as a hostage, was dragged forth on the command of MacGregor's wife.

1) humane.

b The hostage, humiliated and in agony, begged for life.

1) plaid; 2) ecstasy; 3) eloquent; 4) inconsistency; 5) Rashleigh.

c MacGregor's wife regarded the plea with scorn.

1) loathing; 2) boon.

d The captive was hurried to the cliff, overhanging the flood, and in his agony appealed to me for help.

1) prostrate; 2) to haunt; 3) articulate.

e With a stone tied to his neck, the victim was hurled into the lake below, amid shouts of triumph.

1) halloo; 2) vindictive; 3) poleaxe.

186.—OCTOBER

a In Italy on an October day the sun's course from dawn to twilight is glorious and full of splendor.

1) Indian Prince; 2) largess; 3) Ophir.

- b Though mild, the sun's ray is active in maturing the grape.
 1) to shrivel; 2) tendril; 3) to mantle; 4) luxurious; 5) opal.
- c It is pleasant to watch the varying landscape from some spot on the hillside.
 1) cypress; 2) ilex; 3) adust; 4) melancholy; 5) portico; 6) to feast one's eyes; 7) villa.

187.—CHARYBDIS

- a One stormy night a fisherman rowed far out to sea.
 1) coast; 2) Southern Italy; 3) cockle shell; 4) gale; 5) buoyant; 6) bark; 7) placid; 8) glassy; 9) shouting.
- b His bark refused to move toward those who called him, and persisted in making spiral curves.
 1) family boat; 2) to cry aloud; 3) to wave; 4) lustily; 5) skiff; 6) craft.
- c Despairing of controlling his craft, he threw up his arms frantically.
 1) tunic; 2) madman; 3) circle; 4) funnel; 5) hissing; 6) sea bird; 7) to scream; 8) Charybdis.
- d Casting himself flat in his boat, he was drawn down into the abyss.
 1) to spin; 2) ear; 3) to gurgle.

188.—MOLL WHITE

- a An odd-looking creature applied to me for charity as I was walking near the woods with my friend, Sir Roger.
 1) dress; 2) figure; 3) wrinkled hag; 4) aged; 5) grown double; 6) stick; 7) to mumble; 8) galled eyes; 9) crooked shoulders; 10) dress; 11) color.
- b The country-folk told many absurd and marvelous tales about the witch, Moll White.
 1) lip; 2) switch; 3) to stumble; 4) straw; 5) figure; 6) cross; 7) pin; 8) dairymaid; 9) churn; 10) horse; 11) hare.
- c Entering the hovel, my companion pointed out the suspected implements of her art.
 1) solitary corner; 2) broom staff; 3) tabby; 4) chimney-corner; 5) prank.

d I smiled to see that my friend was much puzzled about the old woman.

- 1) human nature; 2) wretched; 3) disgrace; 4) communication;
5) devil; 6) cattle; 7) bounty.

189.—POMPEII

a The crowd in the amphitheater saw a vast vapor shooting from the summit of Vesuvius.

- 1) eye; 2) gesture; 3) Egyptian; 4) dismay; 5) fire; 6) pine tree;
7) fire; 8) to shift and waver; 9) luminous; 10) to blaze;
11) glare.

b The short, dead silence was broken by the yell of the lions.

- 1) heart-sunken; 2) roar; 3) to echo back; 4) amphitheater; 5) fellow-beast; 6) seer; 7) prophet; 8) wrath.

c Within, all were struck with fear and fright; without, the eruption steadily became more violent, spreading its terrors farther and farther.

- 1) shriek; 2) woman; 3) to stare; 4) dumb; 5) earth; 6) to shake;
7) to tremble; 8) crash; 9) mountain cloud; 10) torrent;
11) agitated sea.

d A fearful panic reigned in the amphitheater.

- 1) safety; 2) to fly; 3) to dash; 4) to press; 5) to crush; 6) reckless;
7) groan; 8) prayer; 9) shriek; 10) passage; 11) to escape.

190.—A TYPEE HOUSE

a Near one side of the valley stood an oddly constructed bamboo house.

- 1) midway; 2) ascent; 3) habitation; 4) dwelling; 5) summit; 6) pile;
7) "pi-pi"; 8) veranda; 9) stalk; 10) wood of the hibiscus;
11) thong; 12) cocoanut bough; 13) shelving roof; 14) to thatch;
15) palmetto; 16) sinuate; 17) impervious.

b It was not a large house.

- 1) length; 2) picturesque; 3) breadth; 4) aviary.

- c The interior was curious enough.
1) narrow aperture; 2) to polish; 3) trunk; 4) mat; 5) pattern;
6) couch; 7) divan; 8) Oriental.
- d Instead of wardrobes, they had large packages hung from the ridge-pole.
1) to envelop; 2) tappa; 3) dress; 4) bundle; 5) to lower; 6) to elevate.
- e Various implements of warfare were arranged against one wall, but all articles for domestic use were stored in a shed outside the habitation.
1) tasteful; 2) figure; 3) spear; 4) javelin; 5) savage; 6) larder;
7) "poe-e-poe-e"; 8) culinary.

191.—A PROSPECT

- a While viewing the rolling plain below us, our thoughts are lifted up to God.
1) gladness; 2) to expand; 3) God; 4) rolling; 5) foliage; 6) shade.
- b The great city, shrouded in smoke, lies below us.
1) gigantic; 2) to gleam; 3) ivory whiteness; 4) perpetual; 5) canopy;
6) spire; 7) shipping; 8) complicated.
- c Birds are singing, and flowers are breathing sweetly under the blue heavens.
1) hum; 2) sunbeam; 3) tiny; 4) to unweave; 5) mazy; 6) glossy;
7) surcoat; 8) panoply; 9) dome; 10) lark.
- d In the distance is heard the boom of cannon, while the perch quietly sail in the pond.
1) unstartled; 2) fleet; 3) perch; 4) enjoyment; 5) to mingle.

192.—HECTOR AND ANDROMACHE

- a As Hector was about to issue on the plain, Andromache, his wife, with her maid, carrying the child, came to meet him.
1) Scaean gates; 2) plain; 3) Andromache; 4) Eëtion; 5) Hector; 6) to tend.
- b Andromache, weeping, addressed her husband.
1) to gaze; 2) to weep; 3) to clasp; 4) silently.

- c (C) "Abide here, for if you are slain, I shall be alone in the world".
1) hardihood; 2) to undo; 3) hapless; 4) widow; 5) Achaeans; 6) to slay; 7) Achilles; 8) Cilicians; 9) Thebe; 10) Hades; 11) the archer Artemis.
- d (C) Hector answered: "I would be a coward if I remained here".
1) glancing plume; 2) Trojan; 3) coward; 4) to shrink; 5) valiant.
- e The child shrank from Hector until he had removed his fierce-looking helmet; after which Hector kissed him and prayed for him.
1) to be frightened; 2) to dread; 3) bronze; 4) to nod; 5) helmet; 6) Zeus; 7) preëminent.
- f (C) Hector spoke a last farewell to his wife.
1) tearfully; 2) to caress; 3) sad; 4) to provide; 5) Troy.
- g With many tears Andromache returned to the city, and bewailed Hector while he was still alive.
1) crested; 2) tear; 3) mansion; 4) household; 5) to escape.

193.—THE SNOWSTORM

- a The storm, with its wind and darkness, came at night.
1) to moan; 2) dark as a wood; 3) to swirl; 4) to huddle.
- b The light in the room was the snow light, and through the snow-beaten window showed a snow world.
1) rafter; 2) grizzly; 3) moldy oat-rick; 4) lattice; 5) gray lime; 6) fern; 7) dot; 8) peck; 9) cobweb.
- c It had blocked everything, and it was still snowing.
1) water-course; 2) saw-pit; 3) leaden; 4) mine.
- d Though there was a strong wind, which played pranks with the billows, the downfall was heavier.
1) to curl; 2) to tuft; 3) to comb; 4) to rustle; 5) cornice; 6) to groove; 7) whiff; 8) to channel; 9) chine; 10) herring-bone; 11) to pelt; 12) pitiless; 13) murky; 14) barb.
- e The sun, when he came, was cold, and only really lit up a little circle around him.
1) topmost; 2) cheer; 3) shaft; 4) curtain; 5) verge; 6) purple-blue; 7) to cluster.
- f Such a frost was unheard of, and even burst the trees.
1) Frobisher; 2) sharp; 3) solemn.

194.—THE SON OF THE SUN

a Stung by the words of Epaphus, Phaëthon demanded the sun-car of Phoebus.

1) to discredit; 2) Clymene.

b Phoebus repented quickly of his rash promise, but yielded at length.
1) palace; 2) chariot; 3) book; 4) flaming car; 5) Jupiter; 6) to hurl.

c With the disappearance of night, the chariot was made ready, and Phoebus prepared Phaëthon.

1) chrysolite; 2) rosy-fingered Dawn; 3) purple door; 4) to strew;
5) ambrosia; 6) unguent; 7) to endure.

d When the youth was in his seat and the bars let down, the steeds started on their way, but soon perceived that something was wrong.

1) agile; 2) snorting; 3) fiery; 4) to stamp; 5) boundless plain; 6) to cleave; 7) to outrun; 8) ballast; 9) headlong; 10) beaten road.

e Phaëthon and the earth were on fire.

1) hapless; 2) breath of a furnace; 3) ash; 4) pitchy; 5) Ethiopia;
6) Lybian; 7) nymph; 8) disheveled; 9) chink; 10) Neptune;
11) to screen; 12) husky.

f Jupiter, not finding a cloud, killed Phaëthon.

1) forked lightning; 2) shower; 3) to brandish; 4) to launch; 5) shooting star; 6) Eridanus; 7) Heliades; 8) poplar.

195.—THE PUNISHMENT OF THE IMPIOUS

a In spite of heaven-sent warnings, Wilherm Postik persisted in his evil ways.

1) to forbid; 2) pleasure; 3) to dance; 4) to drink; 5) Mass;
6) God; 7) ill wind; 8) mother; 9) sister.

b When the peasants went off to pray for the dead, Wilherm went off on one of his carousals.

1) feast; 2) dead; 3) mourning garments; 4) church; 5) neighboring town.

- c He had a merry night of it.
1) to pray; 2) souls in Purgatory; 3) to drink; 4) brandy; 5) sailor;
6) coarse song; 7) steady; 8) active.
- d Heated with drink, he strolled homeward in a jolly mood.
1) to sing; 2) road; 3) song; 4) crucifix; 5) to lift the hat; 6) to
lower the voice; 7) thicket; 8) to wound.
- e It was a dark, weird night in autumn.
1) moonless; 2) to rattle; 3) leaf; 4) spring; 5) bush; 6) to shiver;
7) silence; 8) to frighten.
- f It was the witching hour of midnight when he entered the haunted
valley.
1) bells; 2) to sound; 3) to whistle; 4) cart; 5) pall.
- g Wilherm met a hearse.
1) to recognize; 2) black horse; 3) Phantom of Death; 4) iron
whip; 5) Paleface.
- h Not the least scared, Wilherm passed on, and encountered another
ghost.
1) washerwoman of night; 2) hedge of blackthorn; 3) washing
place; 4) pounding; 5) grave clothes; 6) beetle; 7) ghostly;
8) shroud.
- i The ghosts ran up to him while he laughed.
1) to laugh; 2) to offer; 3) winding sheet; 4) to ring out.
- j He complied with their request.
1) to set down; 2) stick; 3) shroud; 4) twist; 5) to break to pieces.
- k Surrounding him, his ghostly relatives called down curses on his head.
1) washerwoman; 2) aunt; 3) wife; 4) mother; 5) sister; 6) a thou-
sand curses; 7) Purgatory; 8) to shake the hair; 9) moor;
10) hedge; 11) voice.
- l Wilherm, frightened, fell, and was killed.
1) out of his wits; 2) hair; 3) to stand up; 4) dismay; 5) to press;
6) vise; 7) iron arm; 8) to stretch.

196.—DON QUIXOTE AND THE WINDMILLS

- a (C) Don Quixote called attention to a number of windmills, against
which he intended to do battle.
1) fortune; 2) monstrous; 3) spoils; 4) righteous; 5) evil brood.

- b (C) Don Quixote claimed the windmills were giants, and ordered Sancho Panza to prayer, while he engaged them in combat.
1) league; 2) millstone; 3) adventure; 4) fierce and unequal.
- c Don Quixote gave spurs to his steed, while Sancho cried after him that the mills were not giants.
1) heedless; 2) positive; 3) cowards; 4) vile beings; 5) knight; 6) Rosinante.
- d A breeze sprang up, and the sails began to move.
1) flourish; 2) giant Briareus; 3) to reckon.
- e He charged the sails with his lance, and he and the horse were thrown to the ground.
1) to commend; 2) buckler; 3) to shiver; 4) shock; 5) in rest.
- f (C) Sancho came to his assistance, and chid him for his mistake.
1) Your Worship; 2) to mind.
- g (C) Don Quixote imagined the sage Friston had changed the giants into mills out of enmity against him.
1) liable; 2) fluctuation; 3) vanquishing; 4) avail.
- h Sancho Panza consoled him, and helped him to mount his steed, and both set out for Puerto Lapice.
1) to be half out.

197.—THE COUNTRY MOUSE AND THE CITY MOUSE

- a The Country Mouse entertained his city friend as best he could.
1) plain; 2) playfellow; 3) to do the honors; 4) gray pease; 5) paring; 6) mellow; 7) to nibble; 8) wheaten straw.
- b (C) "Without loss of time you should move from this hole to the city".
1) crony; 2) to be free with; 3) nasty; 4) melancholy; 5) wood; 6) meadow; 7) rivulet; 8) chirping; 9) rude aspect.
- c The Country Mouse was prevailed on to go to town, where they came upon the remains of a feast.
1) to prevail; 2) entry; 3) tidbit; 4) to purloin; 5) window seat.
- d The courtier entertained a visitor, who was highly pleased with town life, for a few moments, and who, after those few moments, expressed other views.
1) Persian; 2) courtier; 3) address; 4) to acquit oneself; 5) course;

6) clerk; 7) epicure; 8) to tickle; 9) turn of affairs; 10) to scuttle; 11) mastiff; 12) to make the house echo; 13) "Much good may it do you".

198.—THE MINOTAUR

- a To secure peace for Athens, Theseus determined to destroy the Minotaur.
1) Athens; 2) Island of Crete; 3) to devour; 4) pet monster; 5) Minos; 6) sacrifice.
- b Ariadne, the King's daughter, conducted Theseus to the labyrinth.
1) plight; 2) midnight; 3) to unbar; 4) torch; 5) labyrinth.
- c Theseus heard a fierce roar that somewhat resembled a human voice.
1) lowing; 2) bull; 3) articulation; 4) creature; 5) harsh.
- d On seeing the monster, Theseus shuddered, while at the same time he pitied him.
1) to hesitate; 2) hideous; 3) ugly; 4) horned; 5) preposterously; 6) to waddle; 7) detestable; 8) to stride; 9) to emit.
- e After a fierce conflict Theseus slew the huge monster.
1) headlong; 2) a hair's breadth; 3) to bellow; 4) to smart; 5) ridiculous; 6) precisely; 7) to graze; 8) caper; 9) to snap off.
- f So Athens was free.
1) tribute; 2) brave.

199.—LITERARY POACHERS

- a I dreamt of a ragged throng that were robbing themselves piecemeal with varied books which changed to clothes as soon as they were seized.
1) rambling fancy; 2) doze; 3) sage; 4) threadbare; 5) garment; 6) antique; 7) to equip; 8) to deck oneself out; 9) finery.
- b Several, whom I observed, succeeded very ill in making themselves appear wise or elegant by decking themselves out in these borrowed garments.
1) to ogle; 2) polemical; 3) to purloin; 4) trappings; 5) flimsy; 6) illu-

minated manuscript; 7) spoils; 8) tract; 9) philosophy;
10) lamentable; 11) parchment.

- c Some only took a gem, or studied an old costume to catch its style.
1) to help oneself to; 2) to sparkle; 3) ornament; 4) to eclipse; 5) to array; 6) patchwork.
- d The portraits of the old authors suddenly came to life, and demanded their stolen property, whereupon a great hubbub ensued.
1) masquerade; 2) canvas; 3) motley; 4) to rifle; 5) to scamper; 6) to baffle description; 7) culprit; 8) devastation; 9) compiler; 10) affright; 11) raiment; 12) pursy.
- e At the ludicrous sight I burst into laughter, and awoke.
1) catastrophe; 2) immoderate; 3) illusion; 4) scuffle; 5) to resume.

200.—THE POUND OF FLESH

- a Shylock was a usurer of Venice; Antonio was a young merchant whose dearest friend was Bassanio.
1) to amass; 2) to lend; 3) interest.
- b Bassanio, wishing to marry the noble Portia, asked Antonio for three thousand ducats.
1) poor; 2) heiress; 3) to furnish; 4) befitting.
- c Antonio borrowed the money from Shylock on the credit of ships which were soon to arrive.
1) laden; 2) to expect; 3) merchandise.
- d (C) Shylock, before lending, demanded a bond that Antonio should forfeit a pound of his flesh if he could not repay the money when due.
1) to catch him on the hip; 2) grudge; 3) to hate; 4) want; 5) lawyer.
- e (C) As Antonio was unable to pay at the appointed time, he asked Bassanio to visit him before he should die; and Portia promised to pay the sum twenty times over.
1) to forfeit; 2) gold; 3) kind friend; 4) fault.
- f The Jew refused the money.
1) payment; 2) cruel; 3) to insist; 4) to shock; 5) Duke; 6) suspense.
- g Portia proceeded to the trial with her maid Nerissa.
1) apparel; 2) robes; 3) counselor; 4) to arrive.

h Portia received permission to plead the cause.

1) Bellario; 2) to recommend; 3) Balthasar; 4) to grant.

i She allowed the Jew his forfeit, but pleaded for mercy.

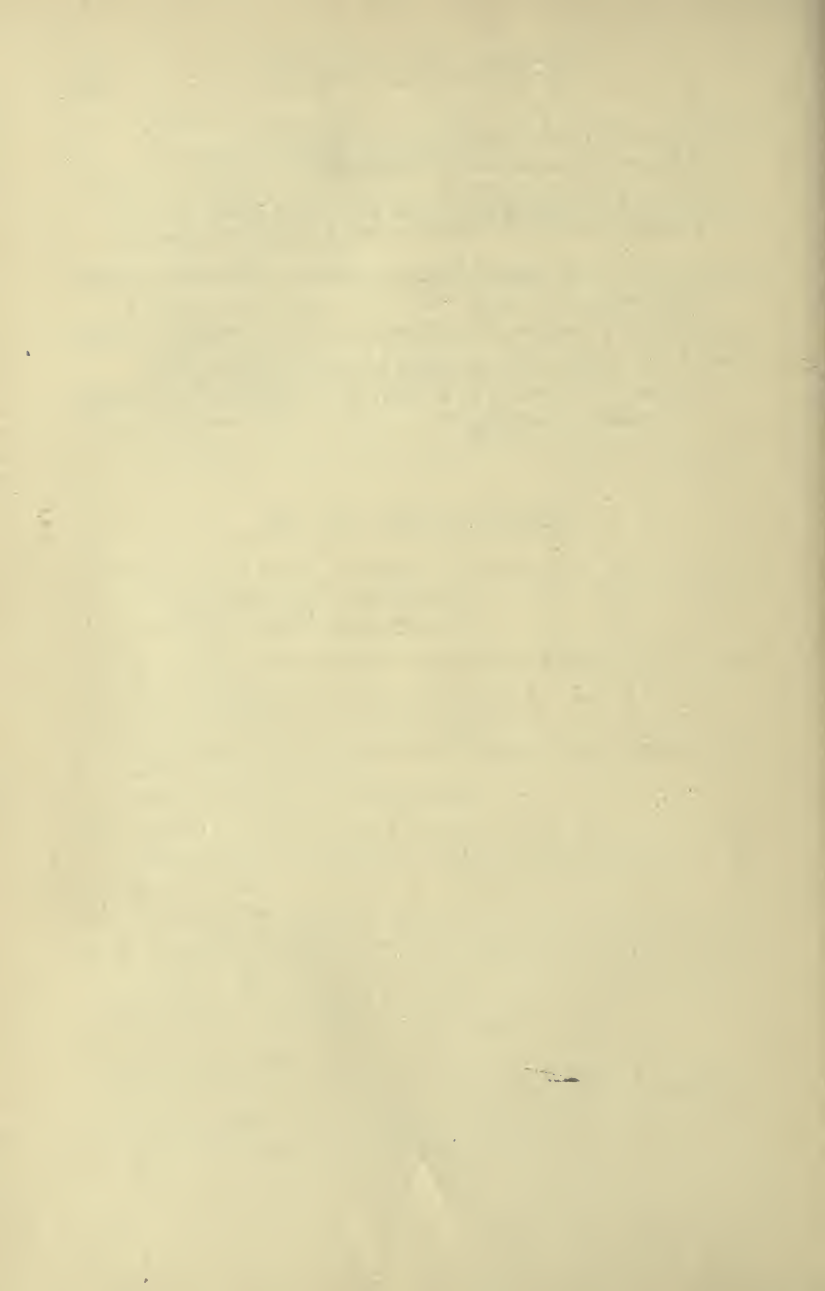
1) to address oneself to; 2) Venetian law; 3) quality; 4) unfeeling.

j (C) On the Jew's repeated refusal of the money, Portia bade the Jew make ready.

1) judgment; 2) scales; 3) to sharpen; 4) knife; 5) eagerly; 6) Daniel.

k (C) Portia forbade the Jew to shed a drop of Antonio's blood.

1) to tarry; 2) expressly; 3) to shed; 4) to confiscate; 5) discovery; 6) plaudit; 7) upright.



APPENDIX

SYNTAX

SYNTAX is that part of grammar which treats of the relation of words in a sentence.

RULES:

1. **Articles** relate to the nouns which they limit.

NOTE: When adjectives are connected, and modify things individually different, though of the same name, the article should be repeated before the second and subsequent adjectives; if the connected adjectives refer to the same thing, the article should not be repeated,—e. g. “A black and a white cat” is said of two cats, “A black and white cat” is said of one cat.

2. **Adjectives** relate to nouns and pronouns.

NOTES: a) Adjectives which have a singular and plural form must agree with their nouns in number.

- b) The reciprocal expression “one another” should not be applied to two objects, nor should the expression “each other” be applied to more than two objects.
- c) The comparative degree can only be used in reference to two objects or classes of objects; the superlative degree compares one or more things with all others of the same class.

- d) When the comparative degree is employed, the latter term of comparison should never include the former; when the superlative degree is employed, the latter term should never exclude the former.
- e) The pronoun "them" should never be used as an adjective instead of "those".
- f) The adjectives "either" and "neither" relate to two things only; when more are referred to, "any" and "none" should be used.

3. **Adverbs** relate to verbs, participles, adjectives, or other adverbs.

NOTES: a) Adverbs should not be used as adjectives; nor should they be employed when quality is expressed, and not manner.

b) A negation in English admits but one negative word.

4. **Participles** relate to nouns or pronouns. Frequently, too, they are governed by prepositions after the manner of nouns, and in this case are called Gerunds.

NOTES: a) Active participles govern the objective case, just as the verbs from which they are derived; the preposition "of", therefore, should not be used after the participle unless the verb from which the participle is derived requires such preposition. When the transitive participle becomes a verbal noun, "of" should be used to govern the object following the verbal noun.

b) The preterite of irregular verbs should not be used for the perfect participle.

5. **Prepositions** show the relation of things, and govern the noun or pronoun following them.

6. A **Noun** or **Pronoun** answering the question "Who" or "What" before a verb is put in the Nominative Case.

7. **Intransitive**, **Neuter**, and **Passive Verbs** take the same case after them as before them.

8. A **Noun** or **Pronoun** used to explain a preceding noun or pronoun is put by apposition in the same case.

9. A **Finite Verb** must agree with its subject in person and number.

NOTES: a) When the subject is a collective noun conveying the idea of plurality, the verb must be plural; if the collective noun conveys the idea of unity, the verb must be singular.

b) When a verb has two or more subjects connected by a copulative conjunction, it must be plural.

Exceptions.—a) If one of the connected subjects is affirmative, and the other negative, the verb must agree with the affirmative subject, and be understood with the other.

β) When the subjects are connected by "as well as", "but", or "save" (unless one of them is negative), the verb (and pronoun) must agree with the former, and must be understood with the latter.

γ) When two or more subjects are preceded by the adjectives "each", "every", or "no", the verb must be singular.

c) Two or more singular nouns connected by "or" or "nor" require a verb in the singular number.

NOTE: When the subjects are of different persons, the verb must agree with the subject placed nearest to it, and be understood with the other subjects

in the person and number required. But if different forms of the verb are required, it is better to express the verb, or its auxiliary, with each of the subjects.

10. **Verbs** connected by a **Conjunction**, or by **Conjunctions**, must either agree in mood, tense, and form, or have separate subjects expressed.

11. **Transitive Verbs** and their present and past participles (active) govern the objective case.

12. A **Pronoun** must agree with its antecedent, and with the noun or pronoun which it represents, in person, number, and gender.

NOTES: a) "As" is sometimes a relative pronoun.

b) The relative "who" is applied only to persons and to animals personified; and "which", to brute animals and inanimate things.

c) Nouns of multitude, unless they express persons as such, should not be represented by the pronoun "who".

d) The relative "that" may be applied to persons or to things. In some cases it is preferable to use "that" rather than "who" or "which".*

13. When a **Collective Antecedent** conveys the idea of

* Some of these cases are:

- 1) After an adjective in the superlative degree, e. g. "Napoleon was the greatest leader that the modern world has seen";
- 2) After the adjective "same", e. g. "This is the same horse that I had yesterday";
- 3) After the antecedent "who";
- 4) After antecedents which are expressed without limitation;
- 5) After an antecedent introduced by the expletive "it", e. g. "It was Cæsar that crossed over into Britain".

plurality, the pronoun must be plural; when the antecedent conveys the idea of unity, the pronoun must be singular.

14. When there are **Two** or **More Antecedents**, the pronoun must be in the plural number.

NOTES: a) When the antecedents are of different persons, the first person is preferred to the second, and the second to the third.

b) The gender of the pronoun, except in the third person singular, is distinguished only by its antecedent. If the antecedents are of different genders, the masculine gender is preferred to the feminine, and feminine to the neuter.

c) When a pronoun has two or more singular antecedents connected by "or" or "nor", it must be in the singular number.

15. A noun or pronoun in the **Possessive Case** is governed in the possessive by the name of the thing possessed.

NOTES: a) When nouns in the possessive case are connected, the sign of possession must always be annexed to that noun, and to that noun only, which immediately precedes the governing noun, expressed or understood.

b) A noun governing the possessive case should not be made plural unless the sense requires it.

16. **Prepositions** govern the objective case.

17. The **Preposition TO** commonly governs the **Infinitive Mood**, and connects it with a finite verb, or some other part of speech. The verbs "bid", "dare", "feel", "hear", "let", "make", "need", "see", "please", are followed by the **infinitive** without "to".

18. The **Subjunctive Present** is used to express a fact which

may be, and which it is likely will be: the **Subjunctive Imperfect** is used to express a fact as a mere possibility, which may take place in some indefinite time. It must be remembered, however, that anything assumed as a fact, even though it be expressed conditionally, requires the **Indicative Mood**.

19. A **Noun** or **Pronoun** is put in the **Nominative** when its case depends on no other word.

20. When **Two Terms** connected by a **Conjunction** refer jointly to a third, they must be adapted to it, and to each other, both in form and in significance.

THIS BOOK IS DUE ON THE LAST DATE
STAMPED BELOW

AN INITIAL FINE OF 25 CENTS
WILL BE ASSESSED FOR FAILURE TO RETURN
THIS BOOK ON THE DATE DUE. THE PENALTY
WILL INCREASE TO 50 CENTS ON THE FOURTH
DAY AND TO \$1.00 ON THE SEVENTH DAY
OVERDUE.

JAN 30 1933

MAY 15 1935

DEC 19 1935

JAN 2 1936

LD 21-50m-8,32

sla

ls

so

YB 02258

30

465122

McNichols

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY

